Autodesk[®] Land Desktop

autodesk®

Getting Started

19103-010000-5000A July, 2001

Copyright © 2001 Autodesk, Inc.

All Rights Reserved

This publication, or parts thereof, may not be reproduced in any form, by any method, for any purpose.

AUTODESK, INC. MAKES NO WARRANTY, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIÉS OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, REGARDING THESE MATERIALS AND MAKES SUCH MATERIALS AVAILABLE SOLELY ON AN "AS IS" BASIS.

IN NO EVENT SHALL AUTODESK, INC. BE LIABLE TO ANYONE FOR SPECIAL, COLLATERAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES IN CONNECTION WITH OR ARISING OUT OF PURCHASE OR USE OF THESE MATERIALS. THE SOLE AND EXCLUSIVE LIABILITY TO AUTODESK, INC. REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF ACTION, SHALL NOT EXCEED THE PURCHASE PRICE OF THE MATERIALS DESCRIBED HEREIN.

Autodesk, Inc. reserves the right to revise and improve its products as it sees fit. This publication describes the state of this product at the time of its publication, and may not reflect the product at all times in the future.

Autodesk Trademarks

The following are registered trademarks of Autodesk, Inc., in the USA and/or other countries: 3D Plan, 3D Props, 3D Studio, 3D Studio MAX, 3D Studio VIZ, 3DSurfer, ActiveShapes, Actrix, ADE, ADI, Advanced Modeling Extension, AEC Authority (logo), AEC-X, AME, Animator Pro, Animator Studio, ATC, AUGI, AutoCAD, AutoCAD Data Extension, AutoCAD Development System, AutoCAD LT, AutoCAD Map, Autodesk, Autodesk Animator, Autodesk (logo), Autodesk MapGuide, Autodesk University, Autodesk View, Autodesk WalkThrough, Autodesk World, AutoLISP, AutoShade, AutoSketch, AutoSurf, AutoVision, Biped, bringing information down to earth, CAD Overlay, Character Studio, Design Companion, Drafix, Education by Design, Generic, Generic 3D Drafting, Generic CADD, Generic Software, Geodyssey, Heidi, HOOPS, Hyperwire, Inside Track, Kinetix, MaterialSpec, Mechanical Desktop, Multimedia Explorer, NAAUG, ObjectARX, Office Series, Opus, PeopleTracker, Physique, Planix, Powered with Autodesk Technology, Powered with Autodesk Technology (logo), RadioRay, Rastation, Softdesk, Softdesk (logo), Solution 3000, Tech Talk, Texture Universe, The AEC Authority, The Auto Architect, TinkerTech, VISION*, WHIP!, WHIP! (logo), Woodbourne, WorkCenter, and World-Creating Toolkit.

The following are trademarks of Autodesk, Inc., in the USA and/or other countries: 3D on the PC, 3ds max, ACAD, Advanced User Interface, AME Link, Animation Partner, Animation Player, Animation Pro Player, A Studio in Every Computer, ATLAST, Auto-Architect, AutoCAD Architectural Desktop, AutoCAD Architectural Desktop Learning Assistance, AutoCAD Learning Assistance, AutoCAD LT Learning Assistance, AutoCAD Simulator, AutoCAD SQL Extension, AutoCAD SQL Interface, Autodesk Animator Clips, Autodesk Animator Theatre, Autodesk Device Interface, Autodesk Inventor, Autodesk PhotoEDIT, Autodesk Software Developer's Kit, Autodesk Streamline, Autodesk View DwqX, AutoFlix, AutoPAD, AutoSnap, AutoTrack, Built with ObjectARX (logo), ClearScale, ColourWarper, Combustion, Concept Studio, Content Explorer, cornerStone Toolkit, Dancing Baby (image), Design 2000 (logo), DesignCenter, Design Doctor, Designer's Toolkit, DesignProf, DesignServer, Design Your World, Design Your World (logo), Discreet, DWG Linking, DWG Unplugged, DXF, Extending the Design Team, FLI, FLIĆ, GDX Driver, Generic 3D, gmax, Heads-up Design, Home Series, iDesign, i-drop, Kinetix (logo), Lightscape, ObjectDBX, onscreen onair online, Ooga-Chaka, Photo Landscape, Photoscape, Plasma, Plugs and Sockets, PolarSnap, Pro Landscape, Reactor, Real-Time Roto, Render Queue, SchoolBox, Simply Smarter Diagramming, SketchTools, Sparks, Suddenly Everything Clicks, Supportdesk, The Dancing Baby, Transform Ideas Into Reality, Visual LISP, Visual Syllabus, VIZable, Volo, and Where Design Connects.

Third Party Trademarks

Élan Llcense Manager is a trademark of Élan Computer Group, Inc.

Microsoft, Visual Basic, Visual C++, and Windows are registered trademarks and Visual FoxPro and the Microsoft Visual Basic Technology logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.

dBASE and Paradox are trademarks of Borland International, Inc.

Oracle is a trademark of Oracle Corporation.

Lotus 1-2-3 is a trademark of IBM Corporation.

All other brand names, product names or trademarks belong to their respective holders.

Third Party Software Program Credits

ACIS® Copyright © 1994, 1997, 1999 Spatial Technology, Inc. Three-Space Ltd., and Applied Geometry Corp. All rights reserved. Active Delivery ™ 2.0 © 1999-2000 Inner Media, Inc. All rights reserved.

© 2000 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

International CorrectDell[™] Spelling Correction System © 1995 by Lernout & Hauspie Speech Products, N.V. All rights reserved. InstallShield[™] 3.0 © 1997 InstallShield Software Corporation. All rights reserved. Portions © 1991-1996 Arthur D. Applegate. All rights reserved.

Portions of this software are based on the work of the Independent IPEG Group.

Typefaces from the Bitstream® typeface library © 1992. Typefaces from the Payne Loving Trust © 1996. All rights reserved.

The license management portion of this product is based on Élan License Manager © 1989, 1990, 1998 Élan Computer Group, Inc. All rights reserved.

Trimble Link™© Trimble Navigation Limited. All rights reserved.

WexTech AnswerWorks © 2000 WexTech Systems, Inc. All rights reserved. Wise for Installation System for Windows Installer © 2000 Wise Solutions, Inc. All rights reserved.

© C-Dilla Labs, a Macrovision Company. All rights reserved.

GOVERNMENT USE

Use, duplication, or disclosure by the U. S. Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in FAR 12.212 (Commercial Computer Software- Restricted Rights) and DFAR 227,7202 (Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software), as applicable

Contents

Chapter 1	Introduction
	Autodesk Land Desktop 3 2
	Installing Autodesk Land Desktop
	What's New in Autodesk Land Desktop
	First Things to Know
	Projects
	Prototypes
	Templates
	Setup Profiles
	Settings
	Menu Palettes
	How to Use the Documentation Set 11
	Recommendations for New Users
	Path Naming Conventions 13
	Finding Information
	Accessing Help
	Help Navigation
	Concepts, Procedures, and Reference Information in Help 16
	Using the Tutorial 16
	Using this Getting Started Guide17

Chapter 2	Installation	19
	System Requirements	20
	3D Graphics System Requirements.	22
	Install Autodesk Land Desktop 3	22
	Use Customized Files and Settings from Release 1 or Release 2i	
	(with SP2)	28
	Register and Authorize Autodesk Land Desktop 3	29
	Add Autodesk Land Desktop 3 Components.	30
	Reinstall or Repair Autodesk Land Desktop 3	30
	Uninstall Autodesk Land Desktop 3	32
	Uninstall Trimble Link	32
	Uninstall Volo View Express	33
Chapter 3	Getting Started with Autodesk Land Desktop	35
	Starting Autodesk Land Deskton	36
	Using Autodock Land Docktop Today	27
	The Autodesk Land Desktop Today	
	Accessing Autodock Land Deckton Commands	20
	Selecting a Menu Palette	40
	Customizing a Menu Palette	
	Toolbars	<u>4</u> 2
	Status Bar	
	Shortcut Menus	40
	Command Line	48
	Transparent Commands	48
	Text Window	49
	Fstablishing Settings	49
	User Preferences	
	Drawing Settings	
	Prototype Settings	
	Data File Settings.	
	Setting Up the Drawing Environment	55
	Using the World Coordinate System for Creating Data	58
	Working with Projects	58
	Creating Projects	58
	Managing Projects with the Project Management Dialog Box.	60
	Managing Prototypes with the Prototype Management	
	Dialog Box	61
	Working with Drawings	62
	Creating New Drawings	62
	Setting Up Drawings	64
	Drawing Setup Example: Setting a Base Point and	
	North Rotation	65

	Opening Drawings	67
	Opening Drawings in Other Types of AutoCAD	67
	Viewing Drawings	69
	Using the Object Viewer	69
	Using Zoom and Pan	70
	Scaling Views	71
	Using Named Views	72
	Redrawing and Regenerating	73
	Organizing Drawings with Layers	73
	Changing Properties of Layers and Objects	74
	Working with the Layer Manager	75
	Using Drafting Settings	77
	Using Reference Points in the Drawing	79
	Plotting Drawings	83
	Exiting Autodesk Land Desktop	84
		05
Chapter 4	Working with COGO Points	85
	Introduction	86
	Point Markers and Labels	87
	Points and CAD Commands	88
	Upgrade Information About Points for Users of S8 Civil/Survey	89
	Working with the Project Point Database	90
	Setting Up the Point Database	
	Establishing Point Settings	
	Changing the Point Creation Settings	
	Changing the Point Marker and Point Text Settings	
	Creating Points	
	Importing Points	
	Using Point Filters	102
	Editing Points	104
	Selecting Points to East	105
	Point Synchronization	108
	Charling With Point Group Status, Showing Charges and	109
	Checking Point Group Status, Snowing Changes, and	110
	Deput Group Operating Point Groups	
	Working with Description Keys	113
	Description Voy Ucago, Doint Markors, and Point Labels	
	Description Key usage, Point Markers, and Point Labers	
	Description Deremators	110 11 <i>6</i>
	Creating a Utility Dala Description Voy	

	Working with External Data References
	Performing Geodetic Transformations on Points
	Calculating State Plane Coordinates from a Known
	Latitude and Longitude
Chapter 5	Working with Drawing and Editing Tools
	Introduction
	Working in Model Space and Paper Space
	Model Space
	Paper Space and Layout Mode
	Controlling the Display in Layout Viewports
	Autodesk Land Desktop Lines and Curves
	Drawing Spiral Curves
	Special Lines
	Working with Basic AutoCAD Commands to Create Objects
	Lines
	Polylines
	Curved Objects
	Curved Lines
	Hatch Patterns
	Working with the Symbol Manager
	Working with Text
	Working with Curved Text145
	Attaching Notes to Objects
	Adding Leaders to a Drawing147
	Digitizing
	Digitizing Methods
	Working with Editing Tools
	Creating a Selection Set with Filters
	Editing with Grips151
	Correcting Mistakes
	Modifying Drawing Objects
	Copying Objects
	Moving Objects
	Kesizing Objects
	Inserting Breaks in Objects
	Using the Utilities Edit Commands
	Creating Blocks
	Attaching External Drawings

Chapter 6	Working with Surfaces	161
	Introduction	162
	Using Point, DEM, Contour, Breakline, and Boundary Data	
	in Surfaces	162
	Surface Accuracy	163
	Working with the Terrain Model Explorer	164
	Creating Surface Data	165
	Creating Breaklines to Use in Surface Generation	165
	Creating Contours to Use in Surface Generation	167
	Creating Boundaries to Use in Surface Generation	167
	Building Surfaces	168
	Building a Watershed Model	171
	Creating Finished Ground Data for Surfaces	174
	Editing Surfaces	175
	Edit History	176
	Working with Surface Output and Visualization Tools	176
	Viewing Surface Statistics	177
	Dynamically Viewing Elevational Characteristics of a Surface	177
	Viewing Quick Sections of a Surface	178
	Creating Contours	180
	Creating Contours from a Surface	180
	Using a Surface Boundary to Contour Around a Building	
	or Pond	183
	Comparing Two Surfaces to Calculate Volumes	185
	Presenting Cut/Fill Results	187
	Creating a 3D Map to Present Elevation Conditions	188
	Projecting 2D Lines onto a 3D Grid	189
Chapter 7	Working with Alignments and Parcels	191
chapter /	Introduction	102
	Morking with Alignments	102
	Multi Usor Alignment Database	102
	Drawing Alignment Coometry	102
	Defining an Object as a Read Alignment	193
	Making an Alignment Current	105
	Editing a Doad Alignment	193
	Deleting and Importing Alignments	100
	Drafting Road Results	201
	Working with Parcels	204
	Drawing Darcel Coometry	204
	Defining Darcels to the Darcel Database	204
	Managing Parcels	203 207
		207

Chapter 8	Listing and Annotating Plans 209
	Introduction
	Listing Object Data
	CAD-Based Inquiry Commands
	Autodesk Land Desktop Inquiry Commands
	Labeling Objects
	Label Styles
	Accessing Labeling Commands
	Editing Label Styles
Chapter 9	Importing and Exporting Data in LandXML Format
	Using the LandXML Import and Export Commands
	Exporting Data in LandXML Format
	Outputting Minimal or Detailed Data
	Exporting Point References
	Importing LandXML Data
	Import Results and Import Selection
	Glossary
	Index

Introduction

Autodesk[®] Land Desktop 3 is based on AutoCAD 2002 and Autodesk Map 5. Using Autodesk Land Desktop 3, you can create, maintain, output, and analyze all of the data in your land development projects.

New features include integrated LandXML data import and export, updated Point Group Manager, and updated dialog boxes for listing and editing points.

1

In this chapter

- Autodesk Land Desktop 3
- What's New in Autodesk Land Desktop
- First things to know
- How to use the documentation set
- Finding information

Autodesk Land Desktop 3

Autodesk Land Desktop 3 is the foundation of the Autodesk Land Solutions suite. Designed for professionals in the land planning and development industries, the Land Solutions suite includes the following products:

Autodesk[®]Land Desktop 3: This is the AutoCAD for land development professionals. It provides a base level of functionality for land planners, surveyors, civil engineers, drafters, and anyone who creates supporting documents.

Autodesk Land Desktop 3 contains all of the functionality of AutoCAD 2002 and Autodesk Map 5.

Autodesk Land Desktop provides an Application Programming Interface (API), so that other add-on products can be designed to work with Autodesk Land Desktop.

- Autodesk[®]Survey 3: An add-on to Autodesk Land Desktop that provides a streamlined ability to communicate survey data to and from the field.
- Autodesk[®]Civil Design 3: An add-on to Autodesk Land Desktop that provides transportation and site engineering tools, and hydrology and hydraulics design and analysis.

NOTE Autodesk Land Desktop 3 is an upgrade to AutoCAD Land Development Desktop Release 2i. You can install and use both products on your machine at the same time.

To use Autodesk Land Desktop 3 .*dwg* files with earlier releases, save version 3 drawings in R14 format by using the Save As command from the File menu. Otherwise, all Land objects display as proxy graphics.

Installing Autodesk Land Desktop

Instructions for installing a stand-alone version of Autodesk Land Desktop are provided in Chapter 2 of this guide. Network installation instructions are available during installation from within the Installation Wizard.

What's New in Autodesk Land Desktop

New Features in Release 3

Product Name and Version Changes

- The product name, formerly AutoCAD Land Development Desktop, is now Autodesk Land Desktop.
- The default project folder is now *Land Projects 3*.

Windows[®] ME Support

 Autodesk Land Desktop now supports the Windows Millennium Edition (ME) operating system in addition to Windows 2000, Windows 98, and Windows NT 4.0. Windows 95 is no longer supported.

Documentation

- The instructions for installing a stand-alone version of Autodesk Land Desktop are provided in Chapter 2 of this guide.
- The instructions for installing a network version of Autodesk Land Desktop are provided online. You can view the instructions when you begin the installation process. You can also access the instructions after installation from the Help table of contents.
- The information in the online Help is now organized into Concept, Procedure, and Reference tabs. For more information, see "Concepts, Procedures, and Reference Information in Help" on page 16.

LandXML Import/Export

You can use the Import LandXML and Export LandXML commands to import and export Autodesk Land Desktop project data in LandXML format. This feature was previously provided as an extension to AutoCAD Land Development Desktop 2i. For more information, see Chapter 8, "Importing and Exporting Data in LandXML Format" on page 221.

Point Groups and Point Selection Dialog Boxes

- The Create Point Group dialog box has been updated to provide a new method for selecting the points to add to a point group (on the Raw Desc Matching tab) and for reviewing the points selected (on the Summary tab).
- Point groups now have persistent properties and can be updated when point data (such as elevation or description) change, or if points are added to or removed from the point database.

- You can now save point groups to, and load point groups from, a prototype.
- The point selection dialog boxes for editing and listing points have been updated. Similar to the new Create Point Group dialog box, they now contain Raw Desc Matching, Include, Exclude, and Summary tabs. Also included is a tab from which you can select point groups to list or edit.
- You can now insert points into the drawing, erase points, remove points from the drawing, and lock and unlock points from within the Point Group Manager and the point selection dialog boxes.

Support for Trimble Products

■ During the installation process, you can choose to install a Trimble menu, which provides commands to import and export data from and to Trimble equipment. To use some of these Trimble Link[™] commands, such as Import Job and Export Road, Autodesk Survey or Autodesk Civil Design must be installed.

Features in Release 2i

If you are upgrading from Release 1.0 or 2.0 of AutoCAD Land Development Desktop, read the following list that describes some of the key features that were added to AutoCAD Land Development Desktop Release 2i.

- Internet Collaboration Tools.
- The Today Window replaced the Startup dialog box.
- The Label Slope command labels the slope between two selected points on a surface, or labels the slope of a TIN triangle.
- The DEM support within the Terrain Model Explorer can be used to include DEM files (Digital Elevation Models) in surfaces.
- The ActiveX Object Model for parcels can be used to create custom commands for working with parcels.
- The GIS Data Transformer provides greater data translation abilities when importing and exporting file formats. Drivers are available for formats such as SDTS and VML. For example, you can import SDTS files into a drawing and then export to VML to view the drawing in a Web browser.
- The Live Enabler automatically downloads Object Enabler functionality from the Internet for AutoCAD users when they open an Autodesk Land Desktop drawing that contains custom objects.

Features in Release 2.0

If you are upgrading from Release 1.0 of AutoCAD Land Development Desktop, read the following list that describes some of the key features that were added to AutoCAD Land Development Desktop Release 2.0.

- DBX support was provided for inter-operability with other AutoCAD programs such as 3D Studio Viz[®].
- The ActiveX Object Model was added, which you can use to create custom projects, points, contours, terrain, and alignments commands.
- The Point Group Manager and the List Points dialog box display both the full and raw point descriptions.
- Point objects can be rotated and leaders can be turned off.
- The alignment database was updated to support multiple users.
- Certain grading commands were moved from the Civil Design Grading menu to the Points and Terrain menus.
- The Building Offset Label command was added to Labels menu.
- 3D Orbit interface was added to the Object Viewer.
- The Set Text Style command was replaced with the standard AutoCAD Text Style command.
- Support for AutoCAD lineweights and plot styles was added to the Layer Manager.
- Lineweight was added to the Build Selection Set dialog box.
- The Curve Solver command was added to Utilities menu.
- The Join 3D Polyline command was moved to the Terrain menu.

First Things to Know



Autodesk Land Desktop Projects Getting Started

This section is designed to introduce you to the elements that form the foundation of Autodesk Land Desktop: projects, prototypes, templates, setup profiles, settings, and menu palettes.

Projects

The *project* is a basic unit of Autodesk Land Desktop. It is a directory structure that contains all the data and settings relevant to the job you are designing. Data includes points, surfaces, drawings, and any other data that you create or reference in your work. Drawings within a single project might illustrate separate aspects of the design yet share a common databases and use common styles.

When you install Autodesk Land Desktop, a project folder (*c:\Land Projects 3*, by default) is created. Each time you create a project, a subfolder named *<project name>* is created within the project folder. For example, if you create a project named 97201, then Autodesk Land Desktop creates the following folder:

c:\Land Projects 3\97201

Autodesk Land Desktop requires that drawings be associated with projects so that it has a location in which to store its external files. When you start a new drawing, you are prompted to select a project for the drawing. You can either create a new project or assign the drawing to an existing project. The drawing remains associated with that project as long as the project exists in the current Project Path. If you delete the project or if you change the project path, then you are prompted to select a project the next time you open the drawing. You can also associate an existing drawing (already assigned to a project) with a different project by using the Reassociate Drawing command.

NOTE If you open a drawing, or create a new drawing, without using the Autodesk Land Desktop versions of the New and Open commands, you are prompted to select a project with which to associate the drawing. If you decline to select a project, then Autodesk Land Desktop automatically creates a project called *_scratch* and links the drawing to it.

When you create a new project, you must specify a name and a prototype (default settings for new drawings that are associated with the project) for the project. You can also add a description of the project and any keywords that help you identify the project. When you are searching for a project, you can filter the list of projects based on the keywords to find a particular project.

For more information, see "Working with Projects" on page 58.

TIP Although it is not required, we suggest that you save the drawings in the *dwg* subfolder that is created in the project folder. This keeps the drawing and the project files together for easier archiving.

Prototypes



Prototypes - concept

Prototypes provide a convenient way for you to maintain standard settings for the drawings. After you set up the drawing settings by using the Drawing Settings command on the Projects menu, you can save them back to a prototype. When you create a new project, you can select a prototype to use for the default settings for new drawing creation.

At first, prototypes may seem similar to templates. However, each serves a distinct purpose:

- Templates are comprised of drawing setup values that control the elements of a drawing. These might include standard layers, text styles, line types, dimension styles, and AutoCAD variables like Aperture. They can also store blocks, such as a border or a company logo. For more information, see the following section, "Templates."
- Prototypes store settings that determine how Autodesk Land Desktop behaves. For instance, a prototype might control point settings, output settings, and standard point groups.

When you install Autodesk Land Desktop, a root prototype folder (*c:\Program Files\Land Desktop 3\data\prototypes*) is created. Each prototype is represented by a subfolder of this root prototype folder. For example, if you create a prototype named MYPROTO, then Autodesk Land Desktop creates the following folder:

c:\Program Files\Land Desktop 3\data\prototypes\myproto

Autodesk Land Desktop always maintains default prototypes, one for feet and the other for meters. If you delete these prototypes, then they are recreated, using the default system settings, the next time you start Autodesk Land Desktop. For more information about prototype settings, see "Prototype Settings" on page 53.

TIP When you base a new project on a prototype, the entire prototype folder is copied to the new project folder. You may want to store commonly-used files in a prototype folder so they are automatically copied to new projects.

Templates

Search Help for...

Drawing Templates concept



Drawing Setup - concept

When you create a new drawing, you can base it on a drawing template. A drawing template is a drawing file with pre-established settings for new drawings and has the extension *.dwt*. For example, you can set up all standard layers in a drawing and save the drawing as a *.dwt* file. If you base a new drawing on this template, then the new drawing is created with all the standard layers. Templates also store text styles, line types, dimension styles, and AutoCAD variables like Aperture. They can also store blocks, such as a border or a company logo.

A template also stores drawing setup values. For example, if you use the Drawing Setup Wizard or the Drawing Setup command to set up a drawing, and then you save that drawing as a *.dwt* file, then the next time you create a new drawing based on the drawing template, all of the drawing setup values are added.

Setup Profiles

Each new drawing can have different units, scale, zone, orientation, text style, sheet size, and border settings. These settings are collectively known as a *setup profile*.

Several setup profiles are included with Autodesk Land Desktop. You can load one of these profiles, or you can customize a setup profile by using the Drawing Setup Wizard or the Drawing Setup command.

You have three options for drawing setup:

- The Drawing Setup Wizard guides you through the setup process by using tips and context-sensitive help that describe each option on each page of the wizard. At the end of the Wizard, you can save the settings to a setup profile you can use again.
- The Drawing Setup command presents all the drawing settings necessary for setting up a drawing, such as units, text style, current zone, and so on, including saving and loading setup profiles.
- The User Preferences command has an option you can select to load a pre-existing setup profile automatically.

Settings



Changing the User Preferences - concept Autodesk Land Desktop settings are comprised primarily of two types: user preferences and drawing settings.

The User Preferences control program-wide preferences such as the project paths for various files, the AutoCAD overrides, and the drawing setup method.

The preference settings are stored in the following folder:

c:\Program Files\Land Desktop 3\data\pref

The file name is *<AutoCAD login name>.dfm*. The preference path settings are stored in the sdsk.dfm file in the program folder.

Drawing settings control many different parameters in Autodesk Land Desktop, such as output settings, label settings, and point settings. When you create a new drawing in a project, the drawing is assigned default drawing settings based on the prototype.

After you change the drawing settings, you can save the settings to a prototype so the settings can be used by other drawings in the project. When you create a new drawing in a project that is based on that prototype, then the drawing settings that you saved to the prototype are used for the drawing. If you changed settings and you want to restore them to the original drawing settings, then you can reload the prototype settings.

The drawing settings file is stored in the project's *dwg* folder. The current drawing name is used as the file name with a *.dfm* extension. For more information, see "Establishing Settings" on page 49.

Menu Palettes

Autodesk Land Desktop menus are arranged in palettes. A menu palette defines the pull-down menus that are available. When you first start Autodesk Land Desktop, the Land Desktop 3 menu palette is loaded. If you want to use Autodesk Civil Design commands, for example, then you must switch to the Civil Design palette.

The default menu palettes that are installed with Autodesk Land Desktop include the following:

■ Land Desktop 3: Contains all the Autodesk Land Desktop menus (Projects, Points, Lines/Curves, Alignments, Parcels, Labels, Terrain, Inquiry, Utilities, Help), the Map menu, and the AutoCAD File, Edit, and View menus. This menu palette is loaded by default when you start



Using Menu Palettes

Autodesk Land Desktop for the first time. This menu palette also includes the Trimble menu if you chose to install Trimble.

- Land Desktop 3 Complete: Contains all the Autodesk Land Desktop menus, the Map menu, and the AutoCAD File, Edit, View, Insert, Format, Tools, Draw, Dimension, and Modify menus. This menu palette also includes the Trimble menu if you chose to install Trimble.
- Autodesk Map 5: Contains the standard Autodesk Map 5 menu, the Autodesk Land Desktop Projects menu, and the AutoCAD File, Edit, View, Insert, Format, Tools, Draw, Dimension, and Modify menus.
- **Civil Design 3** (If installed): Contains the Civil Design menus (Grading, Layout, Profiles, Cross Sections, Hydrology, Pipes, Sheet Manager), the Autodesk Land Desktop Projects, Points, Terrain, Alignments, Inquiry, Utilities, and Help menus, the Map menu, and the AutoCAD File, Edit, and View menus. This menu palette also includes the Trimble menu if you chose to install Trimble.
- Survey 3 (If installed): Contains the Survey menus (Data Collection/ Input, Analysis/Figures), the Autodesk Land Desktop Projects, Points, Lines/Curves, Labels, Terrain, Inquiry, Utilities, and Help menus, the Map menu, and the AutoCAD File, Edit, and View menus. This menu palette also includes the Trimble menu if you chose to install Trimble.

To create a custom menu palette, you can use the MENULOAD command to set up the AutoCAD, Autodesk Map, and Autodesk Land Desktop menus the way you want them, and then save this configuration as a palette.

Menu palettes are saved in the following folder:

c:\Land Desktop 3\data\Menu Palettes

Release 3, 2i, and 2.0 menu palettes have the file extension *.apm2*, whereas Release 1 menu palettes had the file extension *.apm*.

NOTE When you save a menu palette, only the pull-down menu configurations are saved. Toolbar configurations are not saved with menu palettes.

Selecting a Menu Palette

By default, the Land Desktop 3 menu palette is displayed the first time that you run Autodesk Land Desktop. You can select a different menu palette, such as the Land Desktop 3 Complete menu palette, if you want to access different menus.

There are three ways to select a menu palette:

■ You can choose Menu Palettes from the Projects menu and select a menu palette from the Menu Palette Manager dialog box.

The following illustration shows the Menu Palette Manager.

Autodesk Map 5 Civil Design 3 Liand Desktop 3 Land Desktop 3 Cand Desktop 3 Survey 3	Desc The Auto be u: menu	ription complete Aut desk Land D sed as a foun u palettes.	odesk Map 5 men. ssktop 3 Menu. Th dation to simplify th	u with the complete is menu is intended to re creation of custom	0
		Save	Rename	Delete	1

- You can type a macro at the command line to load a default menu palette, such as **MLC** to load the Land Desktop 3 Complete menu palette.
- You can type a command at the command line to access a custom-named menu palette.

For more information, see "Selecting a Menu Palette" on page 41.

How to Use the Documentation Set

The documentation set for Autodesk Land Desktop includes both online Help files and printed documentation. Because Autodesk Land Desktop combines the features of AutoCAD and Autodesk Map along with the Land Desktop features, the online AutoCAD and Autodesk Map documentation is also included in the documentation set.

- Autodesk Land Desktop documentation provides help with commands in the Projects, Points, Lines/Curves, Alignments, Parcels, Labels, Terrain, Inquiry, and Utilities menus.
- AutoCAD documentation provides help with commands in the File, Edit, View, Insert, Format, Tools, Draw, Dimension, and Modify menus.
- Autodesk Map documentation provides help with commands in the Map menu.

NOTE If you installed the Trimble features, you can access Help about these commands by choosing Trimble Link Help from the Trimble menu.

The Autodesk Land Desktop documentation set includes the following documents:

- Autodesk Land Desktop Network Administrator's Guide (online)
- Autodesk Land Desktop Getting Started (printed and in Adobe[®] PDF format)
- Autodesk Land Desktop User's Guide (online)
- Autodesk Land Desktop Tutorial (online)
- Autodesk Map Tutorials (online)
- Autodesk Land ActiveX and VBA Developer's Guide and Autodesk Land ActiveX and VBA Reference (online)
- AutoCAD Learning Assistance[™] (online)
- A complete set of online AutoCAD documentation
- A complete set of online Autodesk Map documentation

Recommendations for New Users

Learning Autodesk Land Desktop

Use this guide and the Autodesk Land Desktop tutorial to learn the main concepts and functionality of the program. For more in-depth information, go to the Autodesk Land Desktop Help.

The Autodesk Land Desktop tutorial is an excellent way to become familiar with tasks that you can perform with the program. The Autodesk Land Desktop tutorial has step-by-step lessons that you can do independently of each other. You can access the Autodesk Land Desktop tutorial by choosing Land Desktop Tutorials from the Help menu.

Learning AutoCAD

If you have never used AutoCAD, then you may want to start by using the *AutoCAD Learning Assistance* to learn the AutoCAD basics. To use the Learning Assistance, place the AutoCAD Learning Assistance CD-ROM in your CD-ROM drive and choose AutoCAD Learning Assistance from the Help menu.

Learning Autodesk Map

Autodesk Land Desktop has a Map menu that contains all the functionality of Autodesk Map 5. If you have never used Autodesk Map 5, then you can start learning the program by using the online Autodesk Map tutorials. You can access the Autodesk Map tutorials by choosing Autodesk Map Tutorials from the Help menu.

Path Naming Conventions

When referring to the Autodesk Land Desktop program folder, the documentation uses the following convention to represent the program path:

c:\Program Files\Land Desktop 3

Of course, if you installed the program on another drive or if you used another folder name, please substitute that path for the path described in the documentation.

When you install the program, a folder for storing the project data is also created. The documentation uses the following convention for the project path:

c:\Land Projects 3

If you installed the program on another drive, or you renamed the project folder, please substitute that path for the path described in the documentation.

Finding Information

The following sections describe how to access the online Help, how to find information in Help, how to use the online tutorial, and how to use this Getting Started guide.

Accessing Help

You can access Help files for Autodesk Land Desktop by using the following methods:

Accessing Help files			
Method	Result	Benefits	
From within Autodesk Land Desktop, choose Help Topics from the Help menu, type Help on the command line, or press F1.	Displays an introductory topic in the online Help. Includes links to AutoCAD Help and Autodesk Map Help.	This Help file displays a combined index and table of contents, as well as a combined search mechanism so you can find the Help topics you need.	

Accessing Help files (continued)

Method	Result	Benefits
From the Autodesk Land Desktop 3 program group, select the Autodesk Land Desktop 3 Help icon.	Displays an introductory topic in the Land Desktop online Help. Use the table of contents, index, or search mechanism to locate information.	Using this method, you can run the online Help independently from Autodesk Land Desktop.
Move the pointer over a command in a menu using the up and down keyboard arrows and press F1.	Displays the Help topic that describes the commands in the menu.	This topic has links to specific Help topics for the commands in the menu.
From a dialog box, click a Help button.	Displays the Help topic that describes how to use the dialog box.	This topic provides the information you need without having to search for it.

Key Concepts

- Within a Help topic, you can move to other relevant topics or definitions by selecting the blue underlined text.
- Click Back on the navigation bar to move to the previous topics that you viewed. Only those topics that you have already viewed in the current instance of online Help are included in this Back button sequence.
- Click Hide to hide the navigation pane of the Help system. Click Show to redisplay the navigation pane.

Help Navigation

The Help system has a variety of methods that you can use to locate information about Autodesk Land Desktop commands, including the table of contents, index, and search. There is also a Favorites tab to which you can add frequently used topics. Each of these methods has its own tab in the left pane of the Help system, as shown in the following illustration:



- The Contents tab has books with topic pages listed below each book. To view a topic, click a book or a page.
- The Index tab lists words organized numerically and alphabetically. Type a keyword to display the index entries, select a topic to view, and then click Display. If more than one topic shares the same index entry, you can choose the topic that you want to view. Only those topics that are indexed are listed on the Index tab.
- The Search tab can locate keywords in the Help system regardless of whether the topic is indexed. You can use options such as AND and NEAR to help narrow down the search.



■ The Favorites tab is a location where you can store frequently-accessed Help topics. When you are viewing a Help topic you want to add to your favorites, click the Favorites tab and then click Add.

Concepts, Procedures, and Reference Information in Help

Many of the topics in Help are organized into concept, procedure, and reference information, making it easier to find relevant information. When such a topic is open, you can switch between concept, procedure, and reference information by clicking the tabs in the right pane of the Help window.

- Concept tabs contain overview information and links to subtopics.
- Procedure tabs contain step-by-step procedures or contain links to subtopics.
- Reference tabs contain information about how to access Autodesk Land Desktop commands and what the commands do. If there is more than one command listed on the Reference tab, move your mouse over the command name to dynamically update the information.

The following illustration shows how the information on the Reference tab changes as you move your mouse over a different command name.

Creating Points	durs Reference
Manual	
Northing/Easting	Creates points by specified geodetic directions.
Direction	Menu
Turned Angle	Points > Create Points > Geodetic Direct
Geodetic Direct	Toolbar
Resection	Points: Create toolbar: 🄀 Geodetic Direct
Station/Offset Object	

Using the Tutorial

Autodesk Land Desktop has an online tutorial that you can use to learn the basic program concepts. The tutorial is set up in lessons that you can perform sequentially or non-sequentially.

Access the online tutorial by choosing the Land Desktop Tutorials command from the Help menu. Double-click the Autodesk Land Desktop Tutorial book icon and double-click the first page to start the tutorial. Click the browse button to move through the tasks in the tutorial. The tutorial window stays on top of the Autodesk Land Desktop window so it stays visible while you perform the steps.

If you prefer to print the tutorial, select Land Desktop Tutorials from the Help menu to display the contents window, click the Autodesk Land Desktop Tutorial book icon, and then click Print at the bottom of the contents window.

Using this Getting Started Guide

This guide introduces you to Autodesk Land Desktop. Each chapter focuses on one or two areas of the land development process, and each topic describes how you can use one or more commands to complete a project task.

In many sections of this guide, you are referred to topics in the Help for more information. For example,



Work in Paper Space and Model Space Overview of Layouts

To find the topics mentioned, use the Search tab in Help.

Some sections in this guide have numbered steps that you can perform to complete a task, such as setting up the point database. To the right of certain steps in a task are titles of relevant Help topics. For example,

Т	To set up the point database		
St	ep	Use Search to locate	
1	From the Points menu, choose Point Management ➤ Point Database Setup to display the Point Database Setup dialog box.	Changing the Point Database Setup Settings	

The above example shows that you can use the Search tab in the Help to locate the topic, "Changing the Point Database Setup Settings."

The following example describes how you can locate a specific topic title in the Help.

To use Help to locate a topic title

Steps

- 1 Start Help by using one of the methods listed in "Accessing Help" on page 13.
- 2 Click Search

The following illustration shows the search tab.



- **3** For best results, select the Search Titles Only check box, and clear the Match Similar Words check box.
- **4** In the edit box on the Search tab, type the Help topic title that you want to find, and then click List Topics.
- 5 From the Select Topic list, locate the topic title you are searching for.
- 6 Click the name of the topic, and then click Display to view the Help topic.

Installation

This section provides instructions for installing and authorizing Autodesk[®] Land Desktop 3 on a stand-alone computer. If you are installing Autodesk Land Desktop 3 for a network, see the *Network Administrator's Guide* located in the *netsetup**support**Adlm**docs* folder on the Autodesk Land Desktop 3 CD.

NOTE Installation instructions are provided in this chapter for both unlocked and soft-locked versions of Autodesk Land Desktop 3. Where appropriate, notes have been added to distinguish the two types of installations.

2

In this chapter

- System requirements
- Install Autodesk Land Desktop 3
- Use customized files and settings from Release 2i
- Register and authorize Autodesk Land Desktop 3
- Add Autodesk Land Desktop 3 components
- Reinstall or repair Autodesk
 Land Desktop 3
- Uninstall Autodesk Land Desktop 3
- Uninstall Trimble Link
- Uninstall Volo View Express

System Requirements

Before you begin installing Autodesk Land Desktop 3 on a stand-alone computer, make sure that your computer meets the minimum recommended requirements. See the following table for hardware and software requirements.

Hardware and software requirements				
Hardware/Software	Requirements	Notes		
Operating system	Windows [®] NT 4.0 with SP 5.0 or later Windows 98 Windows Millennium Edition (ME) Windows 2000	It is recommended that you install and run Autodesk Land Desktop 3 on an operating system in the same language as your version of Autodesk Land Desktop 3 or on an English version of the operating system.		
		Windows 2000 users must have either Power User or Administrator permissions to install Autodesk Land Desktop 3. Not assigning these permissions can cause Autodesk Land Desktop 3 and third-party applications to perform incorrectly. See Windows 2000 Help for information about assigning user permissions.		
		To run the Autodesk Land Desktop application on Windows 2000, users must have either Power User or Administrator permissions. In Windows 2000, Power Users have all the capabilities that Windows NT 4.0 users had. See Windows 2000 Help for more information about user permissions.		
		To use the Oracle8i™ Spatial features in Autodesk Land Desktop 3, you must run Autodesk Land Desktop 3 on Windows 98, NT, or 2000.		
Processor	Pentium [®] 233 (minimum) Pentium 450 or higher (recommended) Equivalent processor			
RAM	64 MB (minimum) 128 MB (recommended)			
Video	800 x 600 VGA with 256 colors (minimum) 1024 x 768 SVGA with 64 thousand colors (recommended)	Requires a Windows-supported display adapter		

Hardware/Software	Requirements	Notes
Hard disk	350 MB of hard disk space (minimum); approximately 340 MB is required for a typical installation. Approximately an additional 55 MB of free hard disk space on your system drive is required for swap files.	
Pointing device	Mouse, trackball, or other device.	
CD-ROM	Any speed (for installation only).	
Optional hardware	Open GL [®] -compatible 3D video card. Printer or plotter Digitizer. Modem or access to an Internet connection. Network interface card (required for network versions of Autodesk Land Desktop 3).	 The OpenGL driver that comes with the 3D graphics card must have the following: Full support of OpenGL or later. An OpenGL Installable Client Driver (ICD). The graphics card must have an ICD in its OpenGL driver software. The "miniGL" driver provided with some cards is not sufficient for use with Autodesk Land Desktop 3. The network interface card must be compatible with existing Ethernet network infrastructure and is required for installing and running the network version of Autodesk Land Desktop 3.
Oracle Spatial (optional)	Oracle <i>8i</i> Spatial client, version 8.1.6, updated with the patch 8.1.6.3.10 for the Oracle Object for OLE (OO4O).	Required to use the Oracle <i>8i</i> Spatial features in Autodesk Land Desktop 3. The Oracle Spatial client can be installed either before or after you install Autodesk Land Desktop 3.
Web browser	Microsoft [®] Internet Explorer 5.0 Netscape™ Navigator 4.5 or later.	Internet Explorer 5.5 is installed with Autodesk Land Desktop 3.

NOTE Additional space may be required for rollback. The rollback feature allows you to restore your computer to the state it was in prior to running setup. This feature is useful if the setup process is interrupted. This feature requires additional hard drive space to store information and files prior to setup. If you do not have the additional hard drive space for the rollback feature, you will be informed and have the option to disable rollback to continue with setup. You may also end setup and clear hard drive space or choose a different drive and then re-run setup.

3D Graphics System Requirements

Autodesk Land Desktop 3 uses the Autodesk Heidi® 3D graphics system and supports dynamically loadable Heidi 3D Display Drivers. These Heidi Drivers are linked into Autodesk Land Desktop 3 at run time and allow Autodesk Land Desktop 3 to take advantage of 3D graphics hardware.

There are two Heidi 3D Display Drivers at present, Heidi Software and Heidi OpenGL. A third, Heidi Direct3D, will be provided in the future as a downloadable update to Autodesk Land Desktop 3.

To use Autodesk Land Desktop 3 with OpenGL, the OpenGL driver provided by the 3D graphics card vendor must have the following characteristics:

- Full support of OpenGL: Version 1.1 or later.
- An OpenGL Installable Client Driver (ICD): The 3D graphics card must provide a full ICD in its OpenGL driver software. The "miniGL" driver provided by some 3D graphics cards and associated drivers is not sufficient for use with Autodesk Land Desktop 3.

Install Autodesk Land Desktop 3

This section includes information for installing Autodesk Land Desktop 3 on a stand-alone computer.

Before you install

- 1 Make sure you have write permission to the following locations:
 - Folder where you are installing Autodesk Land Desktop 3
 - System registry
 - Windows System folder

NOTE To use Autodesk Land Desktop 3 with Windows NT or Windows 2000, you must have Administrator or Power User permission to write to the system registry.

- **2** Close all running applications.
- **3** Disable virus-checking software. Please refer to your virus software documentation for instructions.

NOTE Some files required by Autodesk Land Desktop 3 are installed in your system folder (for example, *c:\Windows\System*, or *c:\Winnt\System32*). This folder may be on a different drive than the folder you specify as the installation folder (for example, *d:\Program Files\Land Desktop 3*). You may need up to 55 MB of space in your system folder, depending on the components you select to install. You are alerted if there is insufficient free space on the drive that contains your system folder.

To install Autodesk Land Desktop 3 on a stand-alone computer

- 1 Insert the Autodesk Land Desktop 3 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
 - Autorun starts the installation process unless you hold down the SHIFT key when you insert the CD.
 - If Autorun is turned off, you must designate the CD-ROM drive. From the Start menu, choose Run. Enter the CD-ROM drive letter and **setup**. For example, enter **d:\setup**.
- 2 On the opening page of the Installation wizard, click Next to continue.
- **3** On the Software License Agreement page, select your country of residence from the list.
- **4** Review the Autodesk software license agreement. You must accept this agreement to complete the installation. To accept, choose I Accept, then choose Next.
- **5** On the Serial Number page, enter the serial number and CD key located on the Autodesk Land Desktop 3 package. Choose Next.

NOTE If you are installing a soft-locked version of Autodesk Land Desktop 3, the Serial Number field defaults to zeros. If you have not yet purchased Autodesk Land Desktop 3, you can install a trial version of Autodesk Land Desktop 3 by leaving the zeros in Serial Number field and continuing with the installation. On the User Information page, enter your user information and choose Next.

- 6 On the User Information page, enter your user information and choose Next.
- **7** If this is a first-time installation, and you do not have any previous version of AutoCAD Land Development Desktop on your computer, go to step 8.

If an existing version of AutoCAD Land Development Desktop is detected on your system and the existing version of AutoCAD Land Development Desktop is Release 1 or Release 2i with SP2, you have two options:

- You can install Autodesk Land Desktop 3 in a separate directory.
- You can uninstall your existing version of AutoCAD Land Development Desktop and then install Autodesk Land Desktop 3.

NOTE You can install Autodesk Land Desktop 3 side-by-side with either AutoCAD Land Development Desktop R1 or AutoCAD Land Development Desktop 2i with Service Pack 2 (SP2). If you have any other version, you must upgrade to 2i with SP2 or uninstall your existing version of AutoCAD Land Development Desktop and then install Autodesk Land Desktop 3.

NOTE If you choose to uninstall your existing version of AutoCAD Land Development Desktop, you need to uninstall any additional product extensions that you have installed.

NOTE Your previous version of AutoCAD Land Development Desktop may have had a hardware lock. Hardware locks are no longer required in Autodesk Land Desktop 3.

8 On the Select Installation Type page, specify the type of installation you want, and then choose Next.

Typical installs the following features:

- **Program files**. Executables, menus, toolbars, templates, TrueType[®] fonts, additional support files, and Land ActiveX components
- Internet tools. Support files and Volo[™] View Express
- Fonts. SHX fonts
- Database. External database tools and support files
- VBA support. Microsoft Visual Basic[®] application support files
- **Batch Plotting**. Batch plotting application and support files
- Plot Lessons.
- Samples. Sample drawings, images, and DesignCenter[™] files
- **Tutorials**. Autodesk Land Desktop

- Dictionaries. American English
- Help files. Online documentation
- Land ActiveX API Samples.

Compact installs only the program files and fonts.

NOTE Soft-locked, compact installations also include Portable License Management.

Soft-locked licenses are limited to one machine at a time. By using the Portable License Utilities, you can transfer a soft-locked license from one stand-alone machine to another. For more information on the Portable License Utilities, launch Portable License Utilities from the Autodesk Land Desktop 3 Program Group and then choose Help. You can also view the AutoCAD Portable License Guide from the Help system (Contents tab) by choosing AutoCAD Online Manuals ➤ Customization Guide ➤ Change the AutoCAD Setup ➤ Use the AutoCAD Stand-Alone License Manager ➤ AutoCAD Portable License Utility.

Custom installs only the files you select. By default, the Custom installation option installs all Autodesk Land Desktop 3 features that are installed with a Typical installation. To install additional features, select the drop-down next to the feature, and then choose Entire Feature Will Be Installed on Local Hard Drive. To remove a feature from the installation, select the drop-down next to the feature and choose Entire Feature Will Be Unavailable.

Installation options on the drop-down list are:

- Entire Feature Will Be Installed on Local Hard Drive: Installs a feature and its components on your hard drive
- **Entire Feature Will Be Unavailable**: Makes the feature unavailable.

Full installs the following features in addition to the files installed by a Typical installation:

- Internet Tools. Internet support files
- **Samples**. Visual LISPTM samples
- **Dictionaries**. French-Canadian
- **Texture maps**. Maps for photorealistic rendering
- OLE/ADI Plot.
- **Tutorials**. Visual LISP tutorials

- **9** On the Destination Folder page, do one of the following:
 - Choose Next to accept the default destination folder.
 - Choose Browse to specify a different drive and folder where you want Autodesk Land Desktop 3 installed. Choose any folder that is mapped to your computer (including network folders), or enter a new path. Choose OK, and then choose Next.

NOTE To preview disk space requirements, select Disk Costing from the Destination Folder page. Choose OK to return to the Destination Folder page.

- **10** On the Support Directories page, do one of the following to specify the Project directory, Temp directory, and Data directory:
 - Choose Next to accept the default folders or directories.
 - Choose Browse to specify a different drive and folder where you want to create Support directories. Choose any directory (including network directories) or enter a new path. Choose OK and then Next.

NOTE A warning is displayed if you choose a directory where existing data or project files will be overwritten.

NOTE For soft-locked installations, critical licensing information is stored in the *c*:*C_dilla* folder. To insure proper operation of your application, do not modify or delete the contents of this folder.

- 11 On the Start Installation page, choose Next to start the installation. The Updating System page is displayed, showing the progress of the installation.
- **12** If an existing version of Microsoft NetMeeting[®] is identified, you can choose to update it to Version 3.01. Choose Yes to update, or No to bypass.

NOTE If you choose not to upgrade NetMeeting, you will not be able to use the Meet Now feature until you upgrade.

13 If you selected a Typical or Custom installation including Volo View Express, Volo View Express is launched at the end of the Autodesk Land Desktop installation. Follow the instructions to complete the installation.

NOTE Volo View Express is necessary for DWF file support and for the Publish to Web feature. If an existing version of Volo View Express is identified, it will be automatically upgraded to the latest version. Volo View Express will not overwrite an existing version of Volo View. If you require the full functionality of Volo View, you may purchase an Autodesk Land Desktop-compatible version separately.

14 Trimble Link™ is now available for Autodesk Land Desktop 3.To install Trimble Link now, choose Yes when prompted and follow the instructions.

NOTE There are some commands in Trimble Link that are only available after you install Autodesk Civil Design 3 or Autodesk Survey 3.

- **15** When the installation is complete, the Setup Complete page is displayed.
- 16 The *Readme* file is opened from this page when you choose Finish. This file contains information that was unavailable when the Autodesk Land Desktop 3 documentation was prepared. If you do not want to view the *Readme* file at this point, clear the check box next to Readme. Choose Finish.

NOTE You can also view the *Readme* file after you have installed Autodesk Land Desktop 3 by choosing Start > Autodesk Land Desktop 3 > Autodesk Land Desktop 3 Readme Files > Autodesk Land Desktop 3 Readme.

- **17** It is strongly recommended that you restart your computer at this point in order for the installation settings to take effect. Do one of the following:
 - Choose Yes to restart your computer now.
 - Choose No to manually restart your computer at another time.

NOTE You will not see the Restart prompt if you chose to view the *Readme* file from the Setup Complete page.

WARNING! If you do not restart your computer, you may have problems running Autodesk Land Desktop 3.

Congratulations! You have successfully installed Autodesk Land Desktop 3. You are now ready to register your product and start using the program. To register the product, double-click the Autodesk Land Desktop 3 icon on your desktop and follow the instructions.

Use Customized Files and Settings from Release I or Release 2i (with SP2)

If you choose to install Autodesk Land Desktop 3 in a different folder, and you want to use your customized files, copy the files from the previous version custom files into the appropriate folder:

(Land Desktop 3\Data or Land Desktop 3\Support).

The following are types of customized files:

- Exported AutoCAD Land Development Desktop profiles.
- LISP files that are loaded during AutoCAD Land Development Desktop Startup.
- AutoCAD Land Development Desktop standard linetype definition files.
- AutoCAD Land Development Desktop menu files.
- AutoCAD Land Development Desktop files contained in the \Data folder.
- Digitizer and plotter configuration information.
Register and Authorize Autodesk Land Desktop 3

The first time you start Autodesk Land Desktop 3, the Authorization wizard is displayed. You can authorize Autodesk Land Desktop 3 at that time, or run Autodesk Land Desktop 3 and authorize it later. Autodesk Land Desktop 3 displays the Authorization wizard for 15 days. Each time you start the program, you are prompted to provide an authorization code. After 15 days, you must enter an authorization code in order to run Autodesk Land Desktop 3.

You can register and authorize Autodesk Land Desktop 3 in one of the following ways:

- Internet. Guides you through entering your registration information and sends it to Autodesk over the Internet. Once you submit your information, registration and authorization occur almost instantly.
- **Fax**. Guides you through entering your registration information. Saves the information in a file that you can print and fax to Autodesk.
- Email. Guides you through creating an email message with your registration information, which you can send to Autodesk.
- **Post/Mail**. Guides you through entering your registration information. Saves the information in a file that you can print and mail to Autodesk.

To authorize Autodesk Land Desktop 3

- 1 Double-click the Autodesk Land Desktop 3 icon on your desktop.
- **2** On the Begin page of the Authorization wizard, select Authorize Autodesk Land Desktop 3, and then choose Next.
- **3** Do one of the following:
 - Select Register and Authorize, which will guide you through the electronic registration process.
 - Select Enter Authorization Code, where you will enter your authorization code (which you'll receive after you've registered your product).
- 4 Choose Next and follow the on-screen instructions.
- **5** After you complete the authorization process, choose Finish to exit registration.

Add Autodesk Land Desktop 3 Components

You can add custom components at any time by running Setup.

To add components

- 1 From the Start menu, choose Settings ➤ Control Panel.
- 2 In the Control Panel, choose Add/Remove Programs.
- **3** Do one of the following:
 - Windows[®] 98, NT, and ME. In the Add/Remove Program Properties dialog box, on the Install/Uninstall tab, select Autodesk Land Desktop 3. Choose Add/Remove.
 - Windows 2000. In the Add/Remove Programs dialog box, select Autodesk Land Desktop 3, and choose Change.
- **4** In the Add/Remove Application dialog box, select Add or Remove Features, and choose Next.
- **5** In the Autodesk Land Desktop 3 Setup dialog box, select a feature and then select one of the following options from the drop-down list. Then choose Next:
 - Entire feature will be installed on local hard drive. Installs a feature and its components on your hard drive.
 - **Entire feature will be unavailable**. Makes the feature unavailable.
- **6** On the Start Installation page, choose Next.

When the components have been added, choose Finish.

7 Restart your computer.

Reinstall or Repair Autodesk Land Desktop 3

If you accidentally delete or alter files required by Autodesk Land Desktop 3, you can reinstall or repair them. When you perform a reinstallation of Autodesk Land Desktop 3, the procedure automatically repairs damaged or missing files. The reinstallation or repair uses the choices you made during the last installation and requires little interaction.

To reinstall Autodesk Land Desktop 3

- 1 From the Start menu, choose Settings ➤ Control Panel.
- 2 In the Control Panel, choose Add/Remove Programs.
- **3** Do one of the following:
 - Windows[®] 98, NT, and ME. In the Add/Remove Program Properties dialog box, Install/Uninstall tab, select Autodesk Land Desktop 3. Choose Add/Remove.
 - Windows 2000. In the Add/Remove Programs dialog box, select Autodesk Land Desktop 3, and choose Change.
- **4** In the Add/Remove Application dialog box, select Reinstall Autodesk Land Desktop 3, and then choose Next.
- **5** In the Autodesk Land Desktop 3 Setup dialog box, do one of the following, and then choose Next:
 - Select Reinstall Autodesk Land Desktop 3.
 - Select Repair Errors in My Autodesk Land Desktop 3 Installation. If you select this option, you also restore your shortcuts if they do not point to the location of your Autodesk Land Desktop 3 files. If you do not want to restore your shortcuts, clear the corresponding check box.
- 6 In the Start Installation dialog box, choose Next, to begin installation.
- **7** In the Backup Files dialog box, highlight the files to back up, and then choose Next.
- **8** In the Autodesk Land Desktop 3 dialog box, when the components have been added, choose Finish.
- **9** Restart your computer.

NOTE You can find information on optimizing and configuring Autodesk Land Desktop 3 in the online AutoCAD Customization Guide. You can view it by choosing Help ➤ Autodesk Land Desktop 3 Help and, from the Contents tab, choosing AutoCAD Online Manuals ➤ Customization Guide.

Uninstall Autodesk Land Desktop 3

When you uninstall Autodesk Land Desktop 3, all components are removed in the process. This means that even if you've previously added or removed components, or if you've reinstalled or repaired Autodesk Land Desktop 3, the uninstall procedure removes all files, making the uninstallation easy.

To uninstall Autodesk Land Desktop 3

- 1 From the Start menu, choose Settings ➤ Control Panel.
- 2 In the Windows Control Panel, choose Add/Remove Programs.
- **3** Do one of the following:
 - Windows[®] 98, NT, and ME. In the Add/Remove Program Properties dialog box, on the Install/Uninstall tab, select Autodesk Land Desktop 3. Choose Add/Remove.
 - Windows 2000. In the Add/Remove Programs dialog box, select Autodesk Land Desktop 3, and choose Change.
- **4** In the Add/Remove Application dialog box, select Remove Autodesk Land Desktop 3, and then choose Next.
- **5** In the Autodesk Land Desktop 3 Uninstall dialog box, choose Next to start the process of removing Autodesk Land Desktop 3.
- **6** On the Autodesk Land Desktop 3 Setup page, after the program is uninstalled, choose Finish.
- 7 Restart your computer.

Uninstall Trimble Link

To uninstall Autodesk Land Desktop 3 Trimble Link

- 1 From the Start menu, choose Settings ➤ Control Panel.
- 2 In the Control Panel, choose Add/Remove Programs.
- **3** Do one of the following:
 - Windows[®] 98, NT, and ME. In the Add/Remove Program Properties dialog box, on the Install/Uninstall tab, select Trimble Link. Choose Add/Remove.
 - Windows 2000. In the Add/Remove Programs dialog box, select Trimble Link, and choose Change.

- **4** In the Confirm File Deletion dialog box, choose Yes to remove the application.
- **5** InstallShield[®] removes the files from your system.
- **6** When the program has been uninstalled, choose OK.

Uninstall Volo View Express

To uninstall Volo View Express

- **1** From the Start menu, choose Settings ➤ Control Panel.
- 2 In the Control Panel, choose Add/Remove Programs.
- **3** Do one of the following:
 - Windows[®] 98, NT, and ME. In the Add/Remove Program Properties dialog box, on the Install/Uninstall tab, select Volo View Express. Choose Add/Remove.
 - Windows 2000. In the Add/Remove Programs dialog box, select Volo View Express, and choose Change.
- **4** In the Confirm File Deletion dialog box, choose Yes to remove the application.
- 5 InstallShield removes the files from your system.

NOTE When uninstalling Volo View Express, you might be prompted to remove shared files that were installed with the application. If you are sure that no other applications are using these shared files, you can choose to remove them from your system.

6 When the program has been uninstalled, choose OK.

Getting Started with Autodesk Land Desktop

To start working with Autodesk[®] Land Desktop, you need to know the basics of operating the program. These basics include menu palettes, and project, prototype, and drawing management.



In this chapter

- Starting Autodesk Land Desktop
- Using Autodesk Land Desktop Today
- The Autodesk Land Desktop drawing environment
- Accessing Autodesk Land Desktop commands
- Establishing settings
- Working with projects
- Working with drawings
- Viewing drawings
- Organizing drawings with layers
- Using drafting settings
- Plotting drawings
- Exiting Autodesk Land Desktop

Starting Autodesk Land Desktop



Starting a Drawing

Session

To start Autodesk Land Desktop, select the Land Desktop 3 icon from the Autodesk Land Desktop 3 program group or from the Windows desktop.



When you start Autodesk Land Desktop, the *Today* window is displayed, shown in the following illustration.



Today provides quick access to drawings. When you place the cursor over a drawing name, a preview of the drawing is displayed. You can also view four of the most recent drawings, or you can view drawings by date, file name, or location by changing the display of the Open/Create tab.

From the Open/Create tab, you can click New, Open, and Project Manager to

- start a new drawing.
- open an existing drawing by specifying the project name.
- manage projects.

NOTE When you install Autodesk Land Desktop, a Land Enabled Autodesk Map 5 icon is created. Use this icon to start an object-enabled version of Autodesk Map. You can use this version of Autodesk Map to open Autodesk Land Desktop drawings and to view custom objects without having to select a project. Using this version, you cannot use Autodesk Land Desktop commands, but you can open multiple drawings at a time and use all of the AutoCAD 2002 and Autodesk Map 5 commands.

Using Autodesk Land Desktop Today

Search Help for...

Overview of the Today Window

The User Interface

In addition to providing quick access to drawing files, you can use the *Today* window to do the following:

- Connect to the Internet via the Point A portion of the window.
- Post messages to a work group via the Bulletin Board.
- Access symbol libraries via the Symbol Libraries tab.

TIP If you want to redisplay the *Today* window after closing it, you can do one of the following:

- Type **today** at the command line.
- Select the Today command from the Help menu.
- Click the Today icon Toolbar.

The Autodesk Land Desktop Drawing Environment

The Autodesk Land Desktop drawing environment is shown in the following illustration:



The menus in the Autodesk Land Desktop 3 menu palette, plus the Image menu, are displayed by default. The Image menu, which is not included in the default menu palettes, provides information about Autodesk CAD Overlay[®]. For more information about menu palettes, see "Selecting a Menu Palette" on page 41.

When you start Autodesk Land Desktop, the Autodesk Map[®]Project Workspace is displayed by default. You can use the Project Workspace to attach drawings to the current Map project (or current drawing), to define queries, and to attach databases.

NOTE You can run multiple sessions of Autodesk Land Desktop 3 on one computer. Within each session, however, only one drawing can be open at a time.

The following section describes how to access Autodesk Land Desktop commands by using menu palettes, shortcut menus, toolbars, the status bar, and the command line.

Accessing Autodesk Land Desktop Commands



Menus and Toolbars Using Menu Palettes Autodesk Land Desktop Macros You can access Autodesk Land Desktop commands in a variety of ways. All commands are available from the pull-down menus, and you can select some commands from toolbars, shortcut menus, or by typing them on the command line. Many Autodesk Map commands are available from shortcut menus in the Map Project Workspace, as well as from the Map pull-down menu.

You can control the pull-down menus and toolbars that are displayed by selecting a menu palette. To use Autodesk Land Desktop commands, use the Land Desktop 3 menu palette (loaded by default when you start the program). You must load the Survey 3 menu palette to access the Autodesk Survey commands, and you must load the Civil Design 3 menu palette to access the Autodesk Civil Design commands.

Key Concepts

- When you carry out a command, prompts and messages display on the command line. You can view a complete history of the prompts and messages of the current drawing session by pressing F2 to open the AutoCAD text window which records the commands. For more information, see "Text Window" on page 49.
- To quit a command at any time, press ESC.
- Autodesk Land Desktop has additional context-sensitive menus that you can access by selecting an object and right-clicking. For more information, see "Shortcut Menus" on page 47.

Pull-Down Menus

You can access most commands and dialog boxes by using the pull-down menus on the menu bar at the top of the Autodesk Land Desktop window.

Projects	Points	Lines/Curves	
User Preferences			
Project Manager			
Prototype Manager			
Prototype Settings			
Data <u>F</u> i	les		
Edit Drawing <u>S</u> ettings			
Reassociate Drawing			
Drawing Setup			
Transformation Settings			
Import LandXML			
Export LandXML			
Unload Applications			
Menu Palettes			

Key Concepts

- After you select a pull-down menu, choose a command by clicking its name.
- If a command name on pull-down menu is shaded, then it is not available at that point in the drawing session.
- Ellipses (..), following a command name indicate that further options are displayed in a dialog box.
- To view online Help about a command, highlight a command in the menu and press F1.
- On the command line, the spacebar usually works like the ENTER key.

You can access pull-down menus and commands in the following ways:

- Select a command on a pull-down menu by clicking its name.
- You can run some commands by typing the whole command name at the Command prompt, or by typing macros. For more information, see "Command Line" on page 48.

Select a pull-down menu by clicking the menu name to display a list of commands, or press ALT and the underlined letter of the menu name. For example, to access the Points menu, hold down the ALT key and press the s key (hereafter: ALT + s). These key combinations are called hot keys.

NOTE If you are using Windows 2000, by default the hot keys do not appear until you press the ALT key.

Selecting a Menu Palette

When you first start Autodesk Land Desktop, the menu bar displays as shown in the following illustration.

```
<u>File Edit V</u>iew Map Projects Point<u>s</u> Lines/Curves Alignments Par<u>c</u>els Labels Terrain Inguiry Utilities Image Trim<u>b</u>le <u>H</u>elp
```

To change the group of menus, you can select a different menu palette.

teps		Use Search to locate
From the Projects menu, se the Menu Palette Manager	elect Menu Palettes to display	Selecting a Menu Palette
Menu Palette Manager Autodesk Map 5 Civil Design 3 Land Desktop 3 Land Desktop 3 Survey 3	Description The complete Autodesk Map 5 menu with the of Autodesk Land Desktop 3 Menu. This menu is be used as a foundation to simplify the creation menu palettes.	complete intended to of custom

2 Choose a menu palette to load.

Under Description, a brief summary about that selected menu palette is displayed.

3 After you have selected the menu palette, click Load.



Autodesk Land Desktop Macros

To load a menu palette quickly, use a macro.

- To load the Autodesk Land Desktop menu, type **MLD**.
- To load the complete Autodesk Land Desktop menu (which includes all AutoCAD menus), type **MLC**.
- To load the Autodesk Civil Design menu, type **MCD**.
- To load Autodesk Survey, type MSV.

Customizing a Menu Palette

To customize a menu palette, you can add other menus to an existing menu palette, or you can create a new menu palette. For example, if you installed Autodesk Civil Design, then you could add the Autodesk Civil Design Grading menu to the Autodesk Land Desktop menu palette so that you always have access to the Grading commands.

To create a menu palette, add the menus that you want to save to the menu palette by using the MENULOAD command, and then use the Menu Palette Manager to save the palette.

NOTE Toolbars cannot be saved as part of menu palettes.

Create a Custom Menu Bar

You can customize the menu bar and create menu palettes to contain commands that you use most often. For example, you can set up an Annotation menu palette that contains the AutoCAD Dimension menu and the AutoCAD Draw menu.

Т	o create a menu palette	
St	eps	Use Search to locate
1	On the command line, type menuload to display the Menu Customization dialog box.	Menuload Command
2	Click the Menu Bar tab, and under Menu Group choose a menu name from the list.	
	For example, if you want to add AutoCAD menus to the menu bar, then choose ACAD.	
3	Under Menus, choose a pull-down menu from the list.	

Т	o create a menu palette (continued)	
St	eps	Use Search to locate
4	Under Menu Bar, select a menu name in the list. The order of the Menu Bar list duplicates the order from left to right of the menus on the menu bar.	
5	Click Insert >>.	
	NOTE You can also remove menus from the Menu Bar list by clicking < <remove.< td=""><td></td></remove.<>	
6	After you finish adding the menus to the menu bar, click Close.	
7	To save this customized menu bar as a palette, choose Menu Palettes from the Projects menu.	
8	In the Menu Palette Manager, click Save.	Saving a Menu Palette
9	Type the name and description of the new palette, and click OK.	Changing the Name or Description of a Menu Palette

Toolbars

When you start Autodesk Land Desktop, the AutoCAD Standard and Object Properties toolbars are displayed at the top of the window, and the Modify and Draw toolbars are displayed on the left side of the graphics screen.

To learn how to display the Autodesk Land Desktop toolbars, see the task at the end of this topic.

You can display other toolbars with various tool categories. Each toolbar contains a set of tools that represents specific commands in a category. Start a command by clicking a tool. To identify a tool, move the pointer slowly over the tool. A small label, or ToolTip, displays the tool name, as shown in the following illustration.



Key Concepts

- You can work with toolbars from the following three categories:
 - standard AutoCAD toolbars
 - Autodesk Map toolbars
 - Autodesk Land Desktop toolbars
- Toolbars can float within the drawing area, or you can organize them as needed by docking them at the top, bottom, or sides of the drawing area.
- To turn a toolbar on or off, select or clear the check box next to its name in the Customize dialog box. You can also close a toolbar by clicking the Close button in the toolbar's upper-right corner. The Close button is visible only when the Toolbar is floating within the drawing area.
- You can customize a toolbar by adding and removing tools or by creating new tools.
- You can enhance an existing toolbar by creating a flyout toolbar.

Tools in the flyout toolbar are nested under the Flyout icon \checkmark (indicated by a black triangle in the lower-right corner). You can replace the Flyout icon with any icon, and then associate a toolbar with it.

Т	o display Autodesk Land Desktop toolbars	
St	eps	Use Search to locate
1	From the View menu, select Toolbars to display the Customize dialog box.	Toolbar Command
	You can also move the cursor over any toolbar, right-click, and choose Customize from the shortcut menu.	
2	On the Toolbars tab, under Menu Group, select Land to display specific Land Desktop toolbars.	
3	Under Toolbars, select a check box on the list to display that toolbar.	
	To close or hide the toolbar, clear the check box.	
4	Click Close.	

Using the Standard Toolbar



Use Windows Cut, Copy, and Paste

You can use several commands in the Standard toolbar to modify objects in drawings. You can copy or remove an object from a drawing to the Clipboard, and then paste the object from the Clipboard into another document.

The following table lists some of the Standard tools and how you can use them in Autodesk Land Desktop. For example, use Print Preview to view a full page of the plotted drawing in a WYSIWYG window.

Standard tools			
Tool	Shortcut Key	Command Line	Description
D	CTRL+N	new	Displays the Autodesk Land Desktop New Drawing - Project Based dialog box.
			For more information about setting up a drawing that is associated with a project, see "Creating New Drawings" on page 62.
2	CTRL+O	open	Displays the Open/Create tab in the <i>Today</i> window.
			For more information, see "Opening Drawings" on page 67.
	CTRL+S	save	Saves the current drawing.
5	CTRL+P	plot	Displays the Plot dialog box.
			For more information, see "Plotting Drawings" on page 83.
à		preview	Displays a preview of the drawing as it would appear on a sheet of paper. Press ESC to return to the drawing.
٠		find	Displays the Find and Replace dialog box to search for text strings and replace them.
*	CTRL+X	cutclip	Removes the selected object from the drawing to the Clipboard. You can retrieve the selected object by using the Pasteclip tool.
	CTRL+C	copyclip	Copies the selected object to the Clipboard as a block. You can retrieve the block by using the Pasteclip tool.

Standard tools (continued)				
Tool	Shortcut Key	Command Line	Description	
Ê	CTRL+V	pasteclip	Inserts a selected object from the Clipboard.	
K)	CTRL+Z	undo	Reverses the last action.	
			For more information, see "Correcting Mistakes" on page 152.	
0	CTRL+Y	redo	Restores the most recent change made by the Undo command.	
			For more information, see "Correcting Mistakes" on page 152.	

Status Bar



Display Coordinates on the Status Bar

The status bar at the bottom of the Autodesk Land Desktop window displays the X, Y coordinates of the current cursor location and the status of frequently used modes, as shown in the following illustration.

2116.48, 511.88, 0.00	SNAP	GRID	ORTHO	POLAR	OSNAP	OTRACK	LWT	MODEL
· ·								

Key Concepts

- You can view the coordinate values of the current cursor location in the left section of the status bar. There are three display options for coordinates.
- Double-click the drawing aids SNAP, GRID, ORTHO, POLAR, OSNAP, OTRACK, and LWT to turn them on and off.
- If you have not specified any running object snaps before selecting a command, you can then specify the object snap settings by double-clicking OSNAP to display the Drafting Settings dialog box. For more information, see "Transparent Commands" on page 48.
- Double-click MODEL/PAPER to switch between paper space and model space when the drawing is in Layout mode. For more information, see "Paper Space and Layout Mode" on page 132"

Shortcut Menus



Shortcut Menus

Shortcut menus provide quick access to display, editing, and labeling commands. Autodesk Land Desktop shortcut menus are context-sensitive and display different commands depending on the type of object selected.

For example, if you select a polyline and right-click, a shortcut menu with specific options for lines is displayed, as shown in the following illustration.



Key Concepts

- Autodesk Land Desktop has a shortcut menu for grip editing. Select an object in the drawing to display the grips, select a grip, and then right-click to display the shortcut menu. For more information, see "Working with Editing Tools" on page 149.
- As you use real-time panning and zooming, you can right-click to display shortcut menus with specific options for those commands.

To display the default drawing tools shortcut menu, hold down the SHIFT key and right-click. The shortcut menus are displayed at the cursor location.



Enter Commands on the Command Line

Switch Between Dialog Boxes and the Command Line

Autodesk Land Desktop Macros

Command Aliases

Command Line

You can access some commands by typing them on the command line. At the Command prompt, enter either the whole command name or the abbreviated name called a *command alias*, and then press ENTER, the SPACEBAR, or right-click to display a shortcut menu.

To use the same AutoCAD command consecutively, type **multiple** before the command name. For example, if you plan to draw more than one identical circle, type **multiple circle**.

During the drawing session, pay attention to the command line. Many commands display prompts with further options, and other commands display a dialog box. If you want to respond to prompts on the command line and suppress the display of a dialog box, then type a hyphen (-) before the command name or command alias. For example, if you type **osnap** on the command line, then the Drafting Settings dialog box is displayed. If you type **-osnap**, then you can set the object snap modes on the command line. There are slight differences between command line options and dialog box options.

Transparent Commands

You can use the command line to access a second command without leaving the first command. To use a command transparently, type an apostrophe (') before the command name on the command line. For example, if you are using LINE to draw a line, you can type 'zoom ('z) or 'pan ('p) to change the view of the drawing and the LINE command remains active. After you have finished using a command transparently, the suspended command continues.

NOTE The only commands that you can use transparently are commands that do not select or create objects, or commands that do not regenerate or end drawings.

Key Concepts

- You can use a command transparently by selecting it from a menu or toolbar.
- Whenever a command name is documented with a leading apostrophe, you can use the command transparently.

- Drafting commands, such as 'snap, 'grid, and 'ortho, are often used transparently.
- After you enter a transparent command name on the command line, double-angle brackets (>>) precede the prompts to indicate that the command is being used transparently.

Text Window



Navigate and Edit Within the Command Window

Use a text window to view a complete history of commands that you used in the current drawing session.

AutoCAD Text Window - Route 202.dwg	_ 🗆 ×
Edit	
Select objects: 1 found, 2 total Select objects: Connecting entities: Done! Select reference point (Enter for start):	Ā
LIGNMENT DATA Description: 202 Bypass Name: route_202 Number: 2 Length: 956.31 Starting station: 0+00 Ending station: 9+56.31 Command: Command: Command: Command:	
Command; Select Alignment;	
Starting Station: 0.00 Ending Station: 956.31	<u> </u>
Command:	

Press F2 to open a text window, which expands from the command line. Press F2 again to return to a drawing window.

Establishing Settings



Changing the Autodesk Land Desktop Settings Early in a project you should establish the following settings:

- User preferences
- Drawing settings
- Prototype settings
- Data file settings

NOTE When you start a new drawing, you also set up the drawing for units, zone, sheet size, and so on. For more information, see "Setting Up Drawings" on page 64.

User Preferences



The User Preferences control three main aspects of the program: file paths, drawing setup method, and AutoCAD overrides.



File Paths

You can control file paths, such as the path for storing menu palettes, prototypes, setup files, and speed tables. To use these items, you must store them in the locations specified in the File Locations settings. For example, to use a speed table to calculate a spiral, the speed tables must be located in the path that you specify for speed tables.

NOTE When you install Autodesk Land Desktop, these paths are set up automatically. You need to change these paths only if you move any items, such as drawing setup files, to a different folder.

AutoCAD Overrides

If you want to use the AutoCAD New and Open commands, instead of Autodesk Land Desktop commands, then you can change the AutoCAD override settings.

Clear the "New" Drawing Dialog check box to use the AutoCAD New command every time you use the New command. Select this check box to use the project-based Autodesk Land Desktop New command.

Clear the "Open" Drawing Dialog check box to use the AutoCAD Open command every time you use the Open command. Select this check box to use the project-based Autodesk Land Desktop Open command. **NOTE** The AutoCAD New dialog box that is used depends on the Startup setting in the Options dialog box.

The Autodesk Land Desktop New and Open dialog boxes are shown in the following illustrations.

Land Desktop New

Drawing reame	
Name:	
Project and Drawi	ing Location
Project Path:	c:\land projects 3\ Browse
Project Name:	Tutorial1
Drawing Path:	c:\land projects 3\Tutorial1\dwg\
Filter Proj	ect List Project Details Create Project
Select Drawing te	emplate Preview
ADAD -Col	lor Dependent Plot Styles.dwt 🔺
ACAD -Col ACAD -Nam acad.dwt	lor Dependent Plot Styles, dwt
ACAD -Col ACAD -Nam acad.dwt ACADISO -N	lor Dependent Pilot Styles.dwt
ACAD - Cel ACAD - Nam ACAD - Nam ACADISO - N ACADISO - N ACADISO - N ACADISO - N	In Dependent Plot Styles.dwt
ACAD -Cell ACAD -Nam Caded dwt ACADISO -N Cadico dwt Cadico dwt	In Dependent Plan Syles.dwt
ACAD -Col ACAD -Nam acad.dwt ACADISO -N acadico.dwt Cacadico.dwt	lot Regender Reit Syles det Vaned Pkd Syles det Vaned Pkd Syles det ders

Land Desktop Open



Sample of a setup file

First Time Drawing Setup

The First Time Drawing Setup setting controls what happens when you create a new drawing. You can use the New Drawing Wizard, the Drawing Setup dialog box, or you can automatically load a setup file whenever you create a new drawing. The following illustrations show the New Drawing Wizard, the Drawing Setup dialog box, and an example of the contents of a setup file.

New Drawing Wizard

Drawing Setup dialog box

wing Setup Profile × Load/Save Settings Units Scale Zone Orier tion Text Style Border C Program Files VL and D epitiop 310 Browns. This profile contains the following setting c:\Program Files\Land Desktop 3\D Browse... - Load a Drawing Setup Profile its and Precision Linear units ... IMPERIAL Angular units ... DEGREES Angular type ... BEARINGS South azimuths ... OFF Linear precision ... 2 . View Load ation precis Save a Drawing ular precision . and Sheet Siz Profile Name Lare and Sneet Size Horizontal scale ...1 in = 100.00 ft Vertical scale ...1 in = 10.00 ft Sheet size ...24 in x 36 in oordinate Zone -Save oordinate Zone WGS 1984, UTM Zone 19 North, Meter Universal Transverse Mercator (UTM) WGS84 Help (fork Nod) Freih -Text Styles Style set ... LEROY -Cancel Help ŬK.

Drawing Settings

The Edit Settings dialog box is a centralized location from which you can modify settings that are specific to each drawing. To display the Edit Settings dialog box, select the Edit Drawing Settings command on the Projects menu.

 Choose 	Edit Settings		×
the program	Program:	Settings:	
that has the	Autodash Land Dashtan	Output Settings	2 . Choose the
settings you		Point Settings	settings you
want to	C Selected Item:	Spiral Type	want to edit.
modify.	Edit Settings	Alignment Labels	
-		Station Format	
3. Click Edit	Save to Prototype	Station Labels Parcel Settings	
Settings.		Label Settings	
-	Load from Prototype	Geodetic Labels Surface Display	
	- All Settings:	Surface 3D Grid	
		Surface 3D Polyline Surface Elevation Shading	
	Save to Prototype	Surface Slope Shading	
	Load from Prototype	Watershed Settings	
		Contour Creation	
		1.000	

The settings are arranged by program so you can more easily locate the settings that apply to a project. There are settings for Autodesk Land Desktop, Autodesk Civil Design, and Autodesk Survey.

These settings are all available elsewhere in the program. The Edit Settings dialog box provides an easy way to change different settings simultaneously and then save them back to a prototype. By saving the settings to a proto-type, they are used automatically whenever you create a new drawing in a project that is based on that prototype. You can establish the settings once and then apply them to each new drawing.

Key Concepts

- The drawing settings are controlled on a drawing-by-drawing basis unless you save them back to the prototype on which the project is based. This is designed so that individual drawings in a project can have different settings.
- The default drawing settings are based on the project prototype that you select when you create a project. For more information, see "Working with Drawings" on page 62.

Search Help for...

Changing the Autodesk Land Desktop Drawing Settings

- If you change drawing settings, then you can save them back to the prototype and use them for new drawings that you create.
- If you change drawing settings, only new objects are affected. Existing objects are not updated with the new drawing settings.

Prototype Settings

Every Autodesk Land Desktop project must be based on a prototype. A prototype stores drawing settings. These settings are copied to each drawing that is created in the project. Autodesk Land Desktop includes a prototype for meters and a prototype for feet.

The Prototype Settings dialog box provides a centralized location from which you can modify prototype settings. To display the Prototype Settings dialog box, select Prototype Settings from the Projects menu, select the prototype you want to modify, and then click OK.



You can establish the prototype settings in two ways:

- You can use the Edit Prototype Settings dialog box.
- You can use the Drawing Settings command to establish settings and then save them to a prototype.

Data File Settings

You can use the Edit Data Files dialog box to access data files for Autodesk Land Desktop, Autodesk Civil Design, and Autodesk Survey. This dialog box provides a centralized location from which you can access and modify import/export formats, speed tables, label styles, tag styles, and contour styles.

To display the Edit Data Files dialog box, choose Data Files from the Projects menu.



If you have Autodesk Survey, you can modify

- Command synonyms.
- Equipment settings.
- Figure Prefix Library.

If you have Autodesk Civil Design, you can modify

■ Sheet Manager label and grid styles

Setting Up the Drawing Environment



Customize the AutoCAD Environment Options Dialog Box After you install Autodesk Land Desktop, you can customize drawing environment settings in the Options dialog box. To display the dialog box, choose Options from the Tools menu, or type **OPTIONS** on the command line.

The settings are grouped under tabs in the Options dialog box as shown in the following illustration.

Sections Section Secti	<u>? ×</u>
Current profile: Land Desktop	😝 Current drawing: lesson-12.dwg
Files Display Open and Save Plotting System User F	Preferences Drafting Selection Profiles
Current 3D Graphics Display GSHEIDI10 Current Pointing Device Current System Pointing Device Accept input from: Digitizer only	General Options Image: Single-drawing compatibility mode Image: Display 0LE properties dialog Image: Display 0LE properties dialog
Digitizer and mouse Layout Regen Options Regen when switching layouts Cache model tab and last layout Cache model tab and all layouts dbConnect Options Store Links indeg in drawing file Open tables in read-only mode	Live Enabler Options Check Autodesk Point A for Live Enablers: Never When Autodesk Pojnt A is available in Today Always Maximum number of unsuccessful checks
	OK Cancel Apply Help

The following table gives a brief overview of the settings.

Options dialog box settings		
Tab	Function	
Files	Specifies the directories to search for support, driver, menu, and other files. Also specifies optional, user-defined settings such as the dictionary to use for checking spelling.	
Display	Customizes the graphics screen display.	
Open and Save	Controls options that relate to opening and saving files.	
Plotting	Controls options related to plotting.	
System	Controls system settings, including the Startup option and Live Enabler settings.	
User Preferences	Controls options that optimize the way you work.	
Drafting	Specifies a number of general editing options, such as AutoSnap™ settings and markers.	
Selection	Controls settings that relate to object selection methods.	
Profiles	Controls the use of profiles. A profile is a configuration that you define.	
	You can restore custom options in a saved profile by making that profile current. However, when you choose Set Current, the operation is immediate. It is recommended that you copy and save the original Autodesk Land Desktop profile settings before you make changes in the Options dialog box.	

Window Display Options

When you start Autodesk Land Desktop for the first time, the screen colors and other settings conform to the Display settings in the Windows Control Panel. You can change the display colors, fonts, and other settings in the Options dialog box.

To change the window display options

Steps		Use Search to locate
1	From the Tools menu, choose Options to display the Options dialog box, and then click the Display tab.	Set Interface Options
2	Under Window Elements, click Colors to display the Color Options dialog box.	
3	Under Window Element, select Model tab background.	
4	From the Color list, select a basic color for the Model tab background, and then click Apply & Close to return to the Display tab.	
5	Click Fonts to display the Command Line Window Font dialog box.	
6	Select a font style and then click Apply & Close to return to the Display tab.	
7	Click OK to exit the dialog box.	

Saving a Profile

You can customize profiles to accommodate different projects and different users. When you change settings in the Options dialog box, the group of settings is automatically saved as the default profile. Any changes that you make are immediate. You have no warning before you lose the default profile settings. To avoid having to reinstall Autodesk Land Desktop to restore the original settings, copy and save them as a backup profile (named, for example, LAND) before you make any changes.

IMPORTANT The Reset button sets the selected profile to the basic AutoCAD 2002 settings, removing access to additional functionality from the selected profile. It is recommended that you copy and save the original Autodesk Land Desktop profile settings before you make changes in the Options dialog box.

Search Help for...

Change to a View of the XY Plane

Using the World Coordinate System for Creating Data

When you use a default drawing template to start a new drawing in Autodesk Land Desktop, you are in the world coordinate system (WCS) automatically. The *X* axis is horizontal, the *Y* axis is vertical, and the *Z* axis is perpendicular to the *XY* plane.

WARNING! If you create data with Autodesk Land Desktop, it is very important that the coordinate system be set to World. If you create data in Autodesk Land Desktop in a coordinate system other than World, that data is *not* processed correctly.

To change the coordinate system to World, type **UCS** on the command line, and then type **World**.

Working with Projects

Search Help for...

Autodesk Land Desktop Projects Creating a New Project Each Autodesk Land Desktop drawing must be associated with a project. This section describes in detail the function of projects and how to manage them.

- To work with Autodesk Land Desktop commands, you must have a project. You can, however, run AutoCAD or Autodesk Map commands without having a project selected.
- You can assign a drawing to only one project. If you want to later associate the drawing with a different project, you can re-associate the drawing by using the Reassociate Drawing command from the Projects menu.
- Projects can contain multiple drawings. All the drawings in a project share data files, such as the point database.
- If you open an existing drawing that is not assigned to a project, then you are prompted to select a project. This assignment is saved when you save the drawing.

Creating Projects

You can create a new project when you create a new drawing, or you can create a new project from the Project Manager. As you create a new project, use the Project Details dialog box to establish the project name, description,

Select a prototype to establish initial drawing settings. Type a name for the project.	Project Details X Initial Settings for New Drawings Prototype: Project Path: C:\Land Projects 3 Project Information Name: Description: Keywords:	Type an optional description for the project. Type optional keywords for the project.
Choose a location for the project's drawing files.	Drawing Path for this Project Project "DWG" Folder Fixed Path DK Cancel Help	

and keywords, as well as a prototype on which to base the drawing settings and a location for the drawing files.

Basing a Project on a Prototype

When you create a new project, you must specify a prototype (default settings for the project) and a name for the project. Autodesk Land Desktop uses prototypes as a convenient way for you to maintain standard drawing settings for project drawings. These standards are important and probably vary from project to project. For example, the standards that you use for state projects may be significantly different from the standards for local or town-related jobs.

You can select a prototype to use for the default drawing settings. All the settings from the prototype are copied into the drawings that are associated with the project.

Project Description and Keywords

When you create a project, you can also add a description and any keywords to help you identify the project. The description and keywords can be helpful if you have multiple projects. You can search on the keywords to find a particular project, and check the description to make sure it is the project that you are looking for.

Project Drawing Location

Each project must have a location for all the drawing files that you create within a project. It is recommended that you store drawing files in the project *dwg* folder, for example, *c*:*Land Projects 3**newproj**dwg*. You can, however, also establish a different, fixed path for the drawing storage location.

By saving the drawings in a project drawing folder, you keep the drawings and the project files together, which makes the project easier to archive or transfer to someone else.

Managing Projects with the Project Management Dialog Box

As you work with more and more projects, you may need to delete an old project, copy a project, rename an existing project, view project locks, or change an inaccurate description. You can do all this and more from the Project Management dialog box.

To display the Project Management dialog box, choose Project Manager from the Projects menu.

Project Manageme	ent X
Project Location-	
Path:	c:\Land Projects 3\
	Browse Remove
Project	
Name:	Tutorial1
	Filter Project List Create New Project
Description:	Governors Subdivision
Keywords:	
	Project Details File Locks
	Copy Rename Delete
	Close Help



Search Help for...

Managing Projects Project Locks From the Project Management dialog box, you can

- Create new projects. If you are a CAD Manager, then you may want to create the projects from within the Project Management dialog box so that others can start their drawings and reference the same project data.
- Create new project paths. By default, the project path is *c*:*Land Projects 3*, but you can create new project paths if desired.
- View the project details, including project description, keywords, and drawing storage location.
- View and manage the file locks. On a network, you can view the file locks to see who has files open.
- Copy, rename, and delete projects. It is recommended that you use the Project Management dialog box for copying, renaming, and deleting project data.

Managing Prototypes with the Prototype Management Dialog Box



Prototypes - concept Managing Prototypes

You may need to maintain different prototypes for different clients. You can copy, delete, and rename prototypes by using the Prototype Management dialog box. To display the Prototype Management dialog box, choose Prototype Manager from the Projects menu.

Prototype Management 🛛 🛛 🖄				
Prototype Location	Prototype Location			
Path:	c:\Program Files\Land Desktop 3\Data\PR0T0TYPES\			
Prototype				
Name:	Default (Feet)			
Description:				
	Copy Rename Delete			
	Close Help			

Default prototypes for feet and meters are included with Autodesk Land Desktop. If you delete the default prototypes, then they are recreated, using the default system settings, the next time that you start Autodesk Land Desktop.

When you install Autodesk Land Desktop, a prototype folder (c:*Program Files**Land Desktop 3**data**prototypes*) is created by default. Each default prototype, and each prototype that you create, is represented by a subfolder of this root prototype folder. For example, if you create a prototype named MYPROTO, then the following folder is created:

c:\Program Files\Land Desktop 3\data\prototypes\myproto

Working with Drawings



Starting a Drawing Session All Autodesk Land Desktop documents are AutoCAD drawings saved with a *.dwg* file name extension. This section explains how to create drawings, establish the drawing settings, and open drawings.

Creating New Drawings

You can create a new drawing from the *Today* window, by selecting the New command from the File menu, or by typing **new** at the command line.

When you create a new drawing, you name it and associate it with a project. Every time you create a new drawing, you are automatically prompted to set up the drawing. Depending on which option you select for "First Time Drawing Setup" (see "User Preferences" on page 50) either the New Drawing Wizard or the Drawing Setup dialog box is displayed, or a setup profile is loaded automatically.

The New Drawing Wizard steps you through each setting that you must establish for a drawing. The Drawing Setup dialog box contains all the settings available in the New Drawing Wizard, but does not step you through the setup procedure.

Whenever you set up a drawing, you can save the setup options to a setup profile that you can load later. Autodesk Land Desktop includes several setup profiles. If you use a setup profile, then you do not have to step through the drawing setup procedure each time you create a new drawing.

Key Concepts

- When you create a new drawing, you must name the drawing and select or create a project.
- When you create a new drawing, you can create a new project.
- You can base a new drawing on a drawing template. Template files contain all the settings for a drawing and can also include predefined layers, dimension styles, and views. For more information about using drawing templates, locate "Using Templates" in Help.

To create a new drawing Steps Use Search to locate 1 From the Autodesk Land Desktop 3 program group, choose the Autodesk Land Desktop 3 icon. The Today window is displayed. Or, if Autodesk Land Desktop is already running, choose New from the File menu. Starting a Drawing Session 2 Click New to display the New Drawing: Project Based dialog box, as shown in the following illustration. Starting a New Drawing

	New Drawing: Proje	ct Based	×	
Type the	Drawing Name			
name of the —— new drawing.	Name:			
5	Project and Drawing	Jocation		
	Project Path:	c:\land projects 3\		Select the
	Project Name:	Tutorial1		project name if
	Drawing Path:	c:\land projects 3\Tutorial1\dwg\		one exists.
	Filter Project	t List Project Details Create Project .		Or you can click Create
Choose a drawing template.	Select Drawing tem ACAD -Color ACAD -Named ACADISO -Named ACADISO -Named Caracteristics dwt	Plot Styles.dwt Plot Styles.dwt rs Browse		Project to create a new project.

For more detailed information about setting up a drawing after naming it and selecting a project, see the following section, "Setting Up Drawings."

Setting Up Drawings

Search Help for...

Drawing Setup Selecting How to Set Up New Drawings By default when you start a new drawing, the Drawing Setup Wizard is displayed, as shown in the following illustration.

🞇 Load Settings			×
✓ Step 1: Load Settings: This step allows you to load a reset collection of Drawing setup parameters.	Path: c:\Program Files\Land Desktor Load a Drawing Setup Profile Profile Name: i100.set (Imperial, 1" = 100') i20.set (Imperial, 1" = 20') i40.set (Imperial, 1" = 40') i50.set (Imperial, 1" = 50') m1000.set (Metric, 1: 1000) m2000.set (Metric, 1: 2000) m200.set (Metric, 1: 250) m500.set (Metric, 1: 500)	p 3\Data\setup\ Browse	
Help	Cancel	< <u>B</u> ack. <u>N</u> ext > Finish	

You can use this Wizard to select the current zone, and to adjust the drawing units, the horizontal and vertical scales, the current text style, and other settings.

Key Concepts

- Set up the drawing units and scale based on a plot scale.
- You can insert custom borders into drawings.
- The precision values in the Drawing Setup Wizard control displayed information and plotted labels, not the actual values that are stored in the database, which are calculated to the highest internal precision.
- After you modify the settings for a drawing, you can use the Load/Save Settings page to name and save the setup so that you can use the same settings for each drawing in a project.
- After you initially set up the drawing, you can modify the Drawing Setup values by choosing the Drawing Setup command from the Projects menu.
Drawing Setup Example: Setting a Base Point and North Rotation

The following example describes how to set a base point and north rotation using the Drawing Setup options.

Before you bring points into a drawing, you may want to set the drawing orientation. The drawing orientation settings include a base point and north rotation. These two settings control the drawing coordinate system. You can adjust both the base point so that it ties into a known coordinate system (that you can specify on the Zone tab of the Drawing Setup dialog box), and the north rotation so that all project points fit within the boundaries of a plot sheet.

Autodesk Land Desktop uses two coordinate systems for locating points: X,Y and northing/easting. When you start a new project, these values all default to 0 so that the *Y* coordinate is the same as the northing, and the *X* coordinate is the same as the easting.

You can set up a base point to assign a specific northing and easting value to a fixed X, Y location. For example, if the drawing points begin at northing and easting coordinates of 5000,5000, then you can set a new base point to translate these coordinates so they fit onto the drawing screen.

By default, North is always represented in a drawing as the top of the screen. But you can define a different orientation of North if the drawing layout requires it. You should typically set the north rotation when you create a new drawing, but you can change it at any time. You can give different drawings that are in the same project different north rotations. This provides different views of the project point data relative to the X, Y coordinates.

To set up the base point and north rotation

Steps	Use Search to locate

1 From the Projects menu, choose Drawing Setup to display the Drawing Setup dialog box.

Setting Up a Drawing Using the Drawing Setup Command

2 Click the Orientation tab.

E Drawing Setup
Load/Save Settings Units Scale Zone Orientation Text Style Border Base Point
North Rotation (Clockwise From Vertical)
C Angle: 0.0000 © Define By Points Pick Points >>
C North Quadrant: C 1 C 2 C 3 C 4 C Azimuth: 0.00000
C Coordinate 1 Northing: 0.0000 Easting: 0.0000
Coordinate 2 Northing: 0.0000 Easting: 0.0000
Use First Point As New Base Point
OK Cancel Help

3 Under Base Point, type *X*, *Y* coordinates for the base point, Changing the Base Point for or click Pick and select a point from the drawing. a Drawing Setting a different base point affects the view of the project data in the current drawing only and does not alter the point database coordinates. All project data files store their information as northing/easting coordinates. 4 Under Northing and Easting, type the northing and Changing the North easting coordinates to associate with the X, Y base point. Rotation for a Drawing For example, if X, Y is 0,0 (the lower-left corner of the drawing screen), then you can specify the local northing/ easting coordinates that were used in a survey of the site, such as 5000,5000. This makes 0,0 equivalent to northing/easting of 5000,5000.

St	eps	Use Search to locate		
5	Under North Rotation, select Angle and type a rotation angle, or select Define by Points and click Pick Rotation to define the rotation angle. Under Points Represent, select the angle that rotation angle represents.			
	In an AutoCAD drawing, North is always the direction toward the top of a drawing. By changing the North rotation, you can orient the site however you want. Changing the north rotation affects only the commands that use a northing/easting coordinate system. It does not rotate the <i>X</i> , <i>Y</i> angular base.			
6	Click OK to close the Drawing Setup dialog box.			
7	From the Inquiry menu, choose Track North/East to display a box that tracks the northing and easting of the pointer as you move it across the screen.	Tracking Northing and Easting Coordinates		

Opening Drawings

You can open an existing drawing by using the *Today* window, by selecting the Open command from the File menu, and by typing **open** at the command line.

If you open a drawing that is associated with an existing project, then the drawing is linked automatically to that project. If you open a drawing that is not associated with a project, then you must select a project or create a new project for the drawing to work with Autodesk Land Desktop commands.

Opening Drawings in Other Types of AutoCAD

Some of the objects, such as points, contours, and labels, that are created in Autodesk Land Desktop are called *ARX objects*. ARX objects cannot be modified if the drawing is opened in another AutoCAD program, such as regular AutoCAD or Autodesk Mechanical Desktop.

To share an Autodesk Land Desktop drawing with someone using another AutoCAD program, it is recommended that the person use Object Enabler from the Autodesk Land Desktop CD-ROM. Or, if the other person can access the Internet, Live Enabler runs automatically when a custom object is detected, as well as provides an option to download Object Enabler components.



Opening an Existing Drawing There are two other options to share Autodesk Land Desktop drawings in another AutoCAD program:

- Use proxy graphics.
- Explode custom objects to polylines by using the EXPLODE command.

Proxy Graphics

Proxy graphics, which represent the custom objects, are used to indicate the locations of custom objects in the drawing.

NOTE If you share a drawing with another person who uses proxy graphics, then make sure when you save the drawing that the PROXYGRAPHICS variable is set to 1.

When an Autodesk Land Desktop drawing is opened in another AutoCAD program, the Proxy Information dialog box is displayed.

Proxy Information				
The last command created proxy objects and proxy entities to represent original objects and entities whose parent ARX application(s) are currently not loaded.				
These proxy objects and proxy entities may yield unexpected results during certain operations.				
Missing Application : AecCivilBase Total Number of Proxies : 4 Number of objects [no graphics] : 3 Number of entities with no graphics : 0 Number of entities with bounding box graphics : 0 Number of entities with real graphics metafile : 1				
Proxy Graphics				
Show proxy graphics				
C Show proxy bounding box				

The Proxy Information dialog box identifies the missing application and the number of proxy objects in the drawing. The dialog box also contains three options:

- **Do not show proxy graphics**: Does not display proxy graphics.
- Show proxy graphics: Replaces custom ARX objects as proxy graphics.
- Show proxy bounding box: Displays a box surrounding custom ARX objects called a *bounding box*.



Work with Custom and Proxy Objects

Viewing Drawings



Specify a 3D View

A drawing position, orientation, or magnification level is called a *view*. The direction from which you view a drawing is called a *viewpoint*. To access standard AutoCAD viewing tools, select 3D Views from the View menu to display a submenu with viewing options. For quick access to viewing options, display the View toolbar in the ACAD menu group.

Key Concepts

- You can view drawings or objects from a side viewpoint, such as right, left, top, or bottom; from isometric angles; and in an elevation view.
- To view a drawing in 2D planes (*X* and *Y* planes), use *plan view*. In plan view, the drawing is displayed as if you were directly above and looking down on it.

NOTE Plan view has a beneficial and fail-safe property. After you have been working in 3D, you can always return to plan view to reorient yourself and the drawing.

• You can view objects in perspective by selecting the Object Viewer or Camera from the Utilities menu.

Using the Object Viewer



Using the Object Viewer

The Object Viewer is a viewing window that displays any objects you select within Autodesk Land Desktop. You can view the objects in either 2D or 3D view. Use the Object Viewer to shade object surfaces and to reorient the view quickly. You can also reorient a drawing view to match the orientation in the viewer.

- The initial view in the Object Viewer corresponds to the drawing view.
- If the drawing is in plan view, the objects in the Object Viewer are in 2D plan view.
- If you are viewing a drawing in 3D, then the objects are displayed in 3D.
- You can shade object surfaces using *flat shading* or *Gouraud shading*. Flat shading shades the objects between the polygon faces. Gouraud shading shades the objects and smooths the edges between polygon faces, giving the objects a smooth, realistic appearance.

To view an object in the Object Viewer

Steps

to locate Use Search to locate Using the Object Viewer.

- 1 From the Utilities menu, choose Object Viewer.
- **2** Select the object you want to view in the Object Viewer.
- 3 Press ENTER to display the Object Viewer dialog box.
- 4 Use the Object Viewer tools to adjust the view.

Using Zoom and Pan

Search Help for...

Pan a View Manage a View (Zoom) The basic display commands, ZOOM and PAN, work much like a lens on a camera that can magnify or reduce the image of an object. Use ZOOM to enlarge or shrink the drawing and use PAN to move the "camera" eye from side to side, up and down, and so on. Zooming does not change the absolute size of a drawing, but changes the size of the view within the graphics area.

After you select Zoom from the View menu, or type **zoom** on the command line, you have several options, as shown in the following table:

Zoom options			
Description			
Zooms in and out of the drawing by moving the magnifying glass icon. Realtime is the default setting for the ZOOM command. You can right-click to display a shortcut menu with additional options.			
Zooms out to include everything within the drawing file. This option also regenerates the drawing.			
Magnifies the screen around a center point by a specified height or magnification factor.			
Displays the drawing within a view box that you can adjust. After you specify the extents of the box, press ENTER and that area becomes the new display.			
Enlarges the drawing to the tightest zoom possible of everything in the drawing file.			
Restores the prior view. You can select up to 10 previous views in succession.			

Zoom options (continued)

Option	Description
Scale	Zooms the display at a specified scale factor. The value you enter is relative to the limits of the drawing. For example, entering 2 doubles the apparent display size of any objects from what it would be if you were zoomed to the limits of the drawing.
Window	Zooms to display an area specified by two opposite corners of a rectangular window.

NOTE If you want to zoom or pan in real time without using commands, select Aerial View from the View menu. The drawing is displayed in a separate, smaller window that remains open while you work, and in which you can navigate around the drawing quickly. For more information, see "Pan and Zoom with the Aerial View Window" in the online Help.

Scaling Views

When you work on the drawing in model space, you work at full scale. In paper space, you must specify a drawing scale that is determined by the size limits of the sheet of paper, or by how you want the drawing views to display.

You can scale the drawing in two ways. You can specify a scale factor at plot time, relative to the paper size, or you can scale the views in paper space floating viewports. Scaling in layout viewports provides instantaneous feedback about whether the drawing view fits on the sheet of paper.

TIP You can use the DIST command to measure the model drawing to help you determine the scale.

Key Concepts

- To scale a view relative to the current view, use the Scale (X/XP) option of the ZOOM command. Add **x** after the value that you enter. For example, enter **2x** to double the image size.
- To scale a drawing relative to paper space units, use the Scale (X/XP) option of the ZOOM command, and then enter the "xp" ("times paper space") factor. For example, if you want 1 inch in paper units to equal 1 foot in drawing units, then 1 in. = 1 ft. Enter the scale factor **12xp** at the prompt.
- Use MVSETUP to scale viewports independently or as a group.



Scale Views Relative to Paper Space

Using Named Views



Save and Restore Views

As you work on a drawing, you may find that you return frequently to the same views. For example, you may zoom repeatedly into a particular area in the drawing. Rather than using the ZOOM command every time you want to view this area, you can name this view, and recall it when you need it.

From the View menu, select Named Views to display the View dialog box in which you can create, save, delete, or restore a view.

💽 Vie	w					? ×
Nam Cu	ned Views Drthographic 8 irrent View: Current	k Isometric \	/iews			
	lame	Location	UCS	Perspective	Set <u>C</u> urrent	
	Q_Current 1 2 3	Model Model Model Model		Off Off Off Off	<u>N</u> ew Dețails	
			0K	Cancel	Help	

- When you save a view, both the viewing position, such as a specific pan or zoom position, and scale are saved.
- If you work in tiled viewports in model space, then only the view in the current viewport is saved. If you work in paper space, you can save the entire layout, including one or more floating viewports.
- When you restore a named view in model space, it replaces the active viewport. In paper space, however, the restored view replaces the entire layout, including one or more floating viewports.
- For more information about viewports, see "Paper Space and Layout Mode" on page 132.

Redrawing and Regenerating



Redraw Command Regen Command When the drawing is cluttered with blips or temporary markers, you can clean up the current viewport quickly by using the REDRAW command. It refreshes the screen and redraws objects without updating the drawing from the database. If you use more than one viewport, you can use the REDRAWALL command.

You can also update the drawing screen by regenerating the drawing. The REGEN command reads all the data in the database and calculates the screen coordinates of each object on the screen.

NOTE When you regenerate a complex drawing, it is time consuming. To reduce regeneration time, you can freeze layers to keep data from being regenerated. Otherwise, you can choose to redraw.

Organizing Drawings with Layers



Overview of Layers Use Layers to Manage Complexity Work with Layers All drawing objects in Autodesk Land Desktop are assigned a layer. Layers in drawings are like sheets of clear acetate that are positioned one over the other. Layers help you organize drawing data, control the drawing display, and control what is plotted or printed. You can make objects on a layer invisible and prevent them from being plotted by freezing the layer or turning if off. You can lock a layer to prevent it from being modified.

- You can group and organize drawing layers by function and other categories. For example, you can place minor contours on one layer and major contours on another.
- Each drawing can have its own layer structure, or hierarchy. You can also set up a layer configuration and then save it as a drawing template to enforce linetype, lineweight, color, and other standards when you create new drawings.
- Assign layers a color, linetype, and/or lineweight to distinguish them from other layers. Layer 0 is created when you start a drawing and it cannot be deleted. All other layers are layers that you create.
- By turning layers on and off, you can plot the same drawing to serve different purposes.
- In lists, layers are sorted alphabetically by name.

Changing Properties of Layers and Objects

You can make changes to objects and layers by using the Object Properties toolbar.

Object Properties						×
₽ € <mark>१¤®</mark> ∎₀	💌 🕑 🔳 ByLayer	•	- ByLayer	ByLayer	 ByLayer 	•

Object Properties toolbar				
Tool	Description			
£	Makes the selected object's layer the current layer.			
Ð	Displays the Layer Properties Manager dialog box in which you can manage layers and linetypes.			
?	Turns layers on and off. Layers that are turned off are invisible and not plotted.			
	Freezes and thaws layers in all viewports. Frozen layers are invisible and all objects are ignored. You can freeze layers to save regeneration time when zooming, panning, or selecting a viewpoint in a complex drawing. As you thaw a layer, Autodesk Land Desktop regenerates the drawing.			
1	Freezes and thaws layers in the current viewport.			
∎	Locks and unlocks layers. To prevent objects on a layer from being modified, lock the layer. The objects remain visible, and you can use commands that do not alter the objects.			
	Displays the color assigned to a layer.			
8	Undoes the last change or set of changes made to layer settings.			
ByLayer	Makes a color current, displays the color of a selected object, and changes the color of a selected object. The list contains the colors used most recently. Click Other to display the Select Color dialog box for additional color selections.			
———— ByLayer	Makes a linetype current, displays the linetype of a selected object, and changes a selected object's linetype.			

Object Properties toolbar (continued)

ТооІ	Description
——— ByLayer	Makes a lineweight current, displays the lineweight of a selected object, changes the lineweight of an object, and makes a lineweight current.
ByLayer	Controls the plot style of objects. By modifying an object's plot style, you can override that object's color, linetype, and lineweight for plotting. You can also specify end, join, and fill styles as well as output effects such as dithering, gray scale, pen assignment, and screening.

Working with the Layer Manager



Working with the Layer Manager In the Layer Manager, you can create, organize, sort, and group layers, as well as save and coordinate layering schemes. You can also implement layering standards to better organize the drawing layers.

You can use groups of layers to create working views and backgrounds from large drawings. You can create filter groups whose layers are assigned to them automatically based on filter criteria that you set for the group. If there are any layers in external reference files associated with the current drawing, an xref group contains those layers. The All layer group is always present and lists all the layers and other layer groups in the drawing.

By saving layer and view information in snapshots, you can quickly recall specific layer and view configurations from complex data sets. For example, a land surveyor might create snapshots of individual site plans and buildings, boundaries, and contours to separate this information from a complete site layout. After you create a layer snapshot, you can add and delete individual layers and then import the snapshot into new drawings to automatically set up a layering scheme.

- You can use the Layer Manager to create and manage new layers, and to make a layer current.
- You can use layer groups to create working views and backgrounds from data sets.
- You can create user groups to which you can assign any layer and filter groups. Layers are assigned automatically based on criteria you set.
- Filter groups can be static or dynamic. Dynamic filter groups automatically update when you change the properties of the layers in them. Static filter groups do not update automatically.
- Create a layer snapshot to save and reuse specific layer configurations from large data sets.

Т	To create a snapshot of a layer group					
St	eps	Use Search to locate				
1	From the Utilities menu, choose Layer Manager.	Creating a Snapshot of a Layer Group				
2	In the left pane of the Layer Manager, click \boxdot to display all the layer groups in the drawing.					
	NOTE If all layer groups are displayed, then skip this step.					
3	Click the layer group that you want to save as a snapshot, right-click, and select Save as Snapshot from the shortcut menu.					
4	In the Snapshot dialog box, type a name for the new snapshot.					
5	Click OK to create the snapshot.					

Using Drafting Settings



Drafting Settings Dialog Box Several Autodesk Land Desktop tools help you draw with accuracy. For example, for maximum control over the drawing, you can set up a background grid that limits points you specify to points on the grid (snaps). You can also restrict location points on objects, such as the midpoint of a line and the center of a circle (object snaps). You can constrain cursor movement to the vertical and horizontal (Ortho mode), and you can turn on display markers and highlights for reference.

Settings for these drawing modes are in the Drafting Settings dialog box, which you can access by selecting Drafting Settings from the Tools menu.

E Drafting Settings			? ×
	ing Dbject Sna 100 100 0000 00 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	p] Grid On (F7) Grid X spacing: 0 Grid Y spacing: 0 Snap type & style Grid snap Grid snap Rectangular snap I sometric snap	
Polar <u>d</u> istance:	0	C Polar snap	
Uptions		UK Lancel	Heip

The following table describes the drafting settings.

Drafting	settings
Drafting setting	Description
Snap	Restricts cursor movements to measured intervals, or invisible "snap" points. You can specify snap distances and whether to display a grid that corresponds to the snap points.
Grid	Displays a web of visible dots that you can use as a guide. The dots are spaced according to the value that you specify in the Snap section of the Drafting Settings dialog box.
	The following illustrations show the grid turned on. In the illustration on the left, Snap is turned off. The cursor does not snap to the grid points. In the illustration on the right, Snap is turned on. The cursor snaps to the grid points.
	Snap off, Grid on Snap on, Grid on
Polar Tracking	Sets the angles used with polar tracking and sets options for object snap tracking. Sets the basis by which polar tracking alignment angles are measured. The following illustration shows an example of polar tracking.
Object Snap	Controls running object snap settings and object snap tracking. Running object snaps automatically snap to points in the drawing when using a command. For more information see "Object Snaps" on page 79.

Using Reference Points in the Drawing

Autodesk Land Desktop provides tools to help you specify points precisely for accurate placement of objects and for reference.

Object Snaps

Search Help for...

Use Object Snaps Snap to Locations on Objects (Object Snaps) You can use object snaps (osnaps) to move the cursor to defined points on objects, such as the center of a circle, the midpoint of a line, or the intersection of two lines. For example, you can start a new line from the exact endpoint of another line. Set the object snaps you want to use in the Drafting Settings dialog box, which is displayed when you choose Drafting Settings from the Tools menu.

🞇 Draftin	g S	ettings			? ×
Snap ar	nd Gi	rid Polar Tracking Object	Snap		
🔽 Obje	oject ect S	Snap <u>O</u> n (F3) nap modes		Object Snap Tracking On (F11)	
	⊽	<u>E</u> ndpoint	ъ	Insertion Select /	411
Δ	Γ	<u>M</u> idpoint	ь	Eerpendicular Clear A	
0	⊽	<u>C</u> enter	ਰ	Tangent	
Ø		No <u>d</u> e	\mathbb{X}	Nearest	
\diamond		<u>Q</u> uadrant	\boxtimes	Apparent intersection	
×	⊽	Intersection	//	🗖 Paraļlei	
	⊽	Extension			
)	To track from an Osnap po command. A tracking vect To stop tracking, pause ov	int, p or ap er the	use over the point while in a ears when you move the cursor. point again.	
Option	s]		OK Cancel	<u>H</u> elp

During a drawing session, if you do not want to use an object snap that you set, you can turn it off temporarily before you select a point. Double-click Osnap on the status bar, or press F3 to turn the settings off. Double-click Osnap again or press F3 to turn the same settings back on.

The Object Snap tab also controls the use of object snap tracking. With object snap tracking, the cursor can track along alignment paths based on other object snap points when specifying points in a command. For more information, see "Verifying and Changing Object Snap Settings" in the online Help, and "AutoTrack" on page 82.

You can use the Object Snap shortcut menu, shown in the following illustration, to specify a specific object snap to use for a point, even when running object snaps are not turned on.

Temporary trac <u>k</u> point
<u>F</u> rom
Poin <u>t</u> Filters 🕨 🕨
<u>E</u> ndpoint
<u>M</u> idpoint
Intersection
Apparent Intersect
E <u>x</u> tension
<u>C</u> enter
<u>Q</u> uadrant
Tangent
<u>P</u> erpendicular
Parallel
No <u>d</u> e
Ingert
Nearest
None
Osnap Settings

To display the Object Snap shortcut menu, run a drawing command like LINE, then press the SHIFT key and right-click.

Search Help for...

Set Object Snap Visual Aids (AutoSnap)

AutoSnap

After you set snap point locations in the Drafting Settings dialog box, you can select AutoSnap[™] options to preview and confirm locations during a drawing session before using the pointing device to specify a point. To access

the AutoSnap settings, choose Options from the Tools menu and click the Drafting tab.

🗱 Options	<u>? ×</u>
Current profile: Land Desktop	😫 Current drawing: lesson-12.dwg
Files Display Open and Save Plotting System User	Preferences Drafting Selection Profiles
AutoSnap Settings Marker Magnet Display AutoSnap tooltip Display AutoSnap aperture box AutoSnap marker golor: Blue	AutoTrack Settings
AutoSnap Marker Size	
	OK Cancel Apply Help

When the cursor moves over an object snap location, a marker is displayed (when the Marker check box is selected). If you pause, a ToolTip shows the name of the location (when the Display AutoSnap Tooltip check box is selected).

The following illustration shows the marker that is displayed over the endpoint, and the ToolTip that explains the snap point the cursor is snapped to.

Endpoint

AutoSnap works even when you set multiple object snaps. Press TAB to cycle through the snap points on an object.

Intersection

AutoTrack

AutoTrack[™] is another way to specify a point in relation to existing points by using the pointing device. AutoTrack helps you draw objects at specific angles or with specific relationships to other objects in the drawing.

When you turn on AutoTrack, temporary alignment paths help you create objects at precise positions and angles. AutoTrack includes two tracking options: polar tracking and object snap tracking. You can turn AutoTrack on and off by choosing Polar and Otrack on the status bar.

Use polar tracking to track the cursor along temporary alignment paths defined by polar angles relative to a command's From or To points. Polar tracking is used only when ORTHO mode is turned off. For an illustration of polar tracking, see "Using Drafting Settings" on page 77.

Object snap tracking works in conjunction with object snaps. You must set an object snap before you can track from an object's snap point. The AutoSnap aperture settings control how close you must be to the alignment path before the path is displayed.

St	eps	Use Search to locate
1	Start by drawing a line or polyline in a drawing, such as the line shown here.	Draw Lines Draw Polylines
	Use the following steps to use AutoTrack to draw another line based on the snap points of this line.	
2	Turn on a running object snap like ENDPOINT by using the Drafting Settings command from the Tools menu.	Use Object Snaps
3	If AutoTrack is not currently active (the OTRACK button on the status bar appears indented when AutoTrack is active), turn on AutoTrack by clicking OTRACK on the status bar.	Track to Points on Objects (Object Snap Tracking)
4	Run a drawing command, like LINE.	
5	When you are prompted to select a point, hold the cursor over one vertex on the original line you drew in step 1, but do not click.	
	A small plus sign (+) is displayed over the point.	

To use AutoTrack for object snap tracking (continued) Steps Use Search to locate 6 Move the cursor to a second vertex on the original line you drew in step 1, but do not click. A small plus sign (+) is displayed over the second point. 7 Move the cursor to locate an alignment point, as shown in the following illustration. Image: ColdO'O''. Endpoint: < 90d0'O''.</td>

8 Click to place the start point of the line at this location that AutoTrack identified.

Plotting Drawings



Overview of Plotting Overview of Plot Styles When you are ready to plot a drawing, set up a layout and configure the settings in the Plot dialog box. These settings include the printer or plotter you want to use, the plot style table, the layout(s) to plot, the plot area, scale, orientation, and other parameters.

To set up a drawing to plot, you work in a layout (also known as paper space). You can click the Model and Layout tabs at the bottom of the drawing screen to switch between model space and paper space. You use the Layout mode to set up the view that you want to plot by configuring viewports. You can have multiple layouts set up within one drawing to plot different views of the drawing. For more information about model space and paper space, see "Paper Space and Layout Mode" on page 132.

Key Concepts

- A *plot style*, which is an object property, can change the way a plotted drawing looks. By modifying an object's plot style, you can override that object's color, linetype, and lineweight. You can use plot styles if you need to plot the same drawing in different ways.
- Plot settings are saved in the drawing.
- The Layout configuration is affected by the following plot settings: paper size, printable area, plot area, plot scale, and plot offset. If you modify the plot settings from the Plot dialog box, the layout paper image reflects the new plot settings after a drawing has been plotted.

Exiting Autodesk Land Desktop

You can exit the Autodesk Land Desktop program by using the following methods:

- From the File menu, choose Exit.
- Type exit or quit.
- Click the close box in the upper-right corner of the Autodesk Land Desktop window.

- When you quit a drawing, you are prompted to save any changes that you have made but not yet saved.
- To allow multi-user read/write access to the point database and the alignment database, the point and alignment information is written directly to the databases, so they never need to be saved.

Working with COGO Points

COGO points are used in almost every land development project to identify locations in space. COGO points contain northing, easting, elevation, description, and name information that is stored in an external point database.

4

In this chapter

- Point markers and labels
- Points and CAD commands
- Upgrade information for users of S8 Civil/Survey
- Working with the project point database
- Establishing point settings
- Creating points
- Importing points
- Using point filters
- Editing points
- Point synchronization
- Working with point groups
- Working with description keys
- Working with external data references
- Geodetic transformations

Introduction



COGO Points

Points that Autodesk Land Desktop creates are called *COGO points*. COGO stands for *Coordinate Geometry*. COGO points are stored in an external database and are organized by their point numbers. COGO points have extended entity data associated with the points that includes point number, point name, description, elevation, northing, and easting.

COGO point data is stored in an external database file called *points.mdb*, which is referenced by all drawings in a project. Because project points are stored externally, you can reference them without drafting them in a drawing. Point data can be accessed by multiple people on a network.

To add points to the point database, you can do the following:

- Create points using the Create Points commands on the Points menu.
- Import ASCII files.
- Import data from a Microsoft[®] Access database file.
- Download from a data collector.

The following diagram illustrates the several ways to add points to a project.



The Points menu contains most of the point commands that you use to change point settings, add points to a project, and edit points in Autodesk Land Desktop.

Points	
Point Settings	
Point <u>M</u> anagement	۲
<u>C</u> reate Points	۲
Create Points - Intersections	۲
Create Points - Alignments	۲
Create Points - <u>S</u> urface	F
Create Points - Slope	۲
Create Points - Interpol <u>a</u> te	۲
Import/E <u>x</u> port Points	۲
List Points	
Loc <u>k</u> /Unlock Points	۲
<u>E</u> dit Points	۲
C <u>h</u> eck Points	۲
Insert Points to Drawing	
Remove From Drawing	
Stakeout	۲
Point <u>U</u> tilities	۲

Point Markers and Labels



Differences Between Point Markers and Point Labels When you create points, you have the option to display *point markers* or *point labels*, or both. Point markers can include point number, elevation, and either raw or full description, and are controlled by settings on the Text and Marker tabs in the Point Settings dialog box. If you want to label points with additional data and insert description key symbols, you must use point labels.

Point markers can stay the same size relative to the AutoCAD graphics window, or they can be a fixed size in the drawing. The following illustration shows point markers that are sized relative to the graphics window zoom level.



Point markers include a point marker node and point marker text for point number, description, and elevation. Although you must use labels to achieve full description key substitution, you can substitute full descriptions for raw descriptions using point markers.

In contrast, point labels can label any number of items. You can customize point labels to display any type of information about points. You can label points with data from external databases by using External Data References (XDRefs). You can also set up point label styles that perform description key substitution.

For more information about point markers, see "Changing the Point Marker and Point Text Settings" on page 95. For more information about description keys and point labels, see "Working with Description Keys" on page 114.

Points and CAD Commands

The commands from the Points menu create COGO point objects that have extended entity data. These objects are different from the simple CAD point nodes that you can create with the POINT command.

The following illustration shows a CAD point node created with the POINT command on the left. On the right is a COGO point object created with a

command from the Points menu. The point text was dragged away from the marker and a leader was created automatically.



The COGO points are usually assigned description and elevation data as well as a required point number and northing and easting coordinates. This point data is stored in the point database. In contrast, a point node exists only in a drawing file, and it has only *X*, *Y*, and *Z* data associated with it.

You can convert CAD point nodes to COGO points by using the Convert from AutoCAD Points command from the Points ➤ Point Utilities menu.

Upgrade Information About Points for Users of S8 Civil/Survey

If you are familiar with Autodesk S8 Civil/Survey programs, this section summarizes new point features that were added to Autodesk Land Desktop.

A COGO point is an object instead of a block with attributes. All point features are now placed on the same layer, the current layer, unless you use description keys or point labels. The point object can stay the same size regardless of the zoom level magnification you use.

You can create leaders for points by dragging the point grip away from the point node, or you can turn this option off in the Point Settings dialog box so that leaders are not created when you move the markers.



- The point database is a Microsoft Access database in Access 97 format.
- You can label points by using point labels. You can label the number, name, description, and elevation, as well as data from external databases.
 For example, you can label a point with different elevations obtained from borehole data.
- You can set up external references (or *XDRefs*) to external databases by using the XDRef Manager to display extended point data. Or, you can use the point object as a database display object for information other than point data.
- You can use the Point Group Manager to create point groups, which make it easier to manage a large number of points.
- When you reference points in a point group, you can override point database values with either fixed information or information from an external database.
- The Description Key Manager creates and manages description keys. Description key definitions are now stored in databases. You can have multiple description key files per project.

For more information about changes to points for Autodesk Land Desktop 3, see "What's New in Autodesk Land Desktop" on page 3.

Working with the Project Point Database



Autodesk Land Desktop uses a project point database to store the point information for a project. This file is named *points.mdb* and is stored in the project *cogo* folder.

Database Create Point Database Dialog Box

Creating the Point

(For example, c:\Land Projects 3\newproj\cogo\points.mdb.)

You are prompted to set up this point database whenever you start a new project.

The Points commands in Autodesk Land Desktop, and any commands in Autodesk Civil Design or Autodesk Survey that create points, add points to a point database. If you use Autodesk Survey to import a fieldbook file, then the point data is added to the point database and the observation data is added to the observation database.

- All programs in the Autodesk Land Solutions suite use the point database.
- You can set up the point database so multiple people can access it over a network.
- The point database stores all the point information outside of the drawings, which keeps the size of the drawing files smaller.

Because all the project point information is stored in one file, it is easier to manage point data for a project. This is especially true when you work on a large project that contains several different drawings or when you work on the same project with other people on a network.

All commands that use point data, such as when you draw a line between points, refer to the point database, not to the drawing. Therefore, you can perform these functions even when the points are not drafted in the drawing. This gives you added flexibility when you work on large projects with thousands of points. By keeping the points out of the drawing, you can speed up redraw time significantly.

Because all point information is stored in a database, you can create a new drawing and insert only the project points that meet specific criteria, such as region, point number range, or description. For example, you can insert points with descriptions associated with the boundary, such as iron pipes, corner points, or fence points.

You can limit access to the point database to one person, or you can share it with other people. If you share the point database with other people, then you can use the Lock Points command from the Points menu to protect against unwanted edits to the database.

- All drawings in a project share a single point database file.
- Autodesk Land Desktop protects against duplicate point numbers. You are prompted for how to resolve any duplicates that may arise.
- For users of Autodesk S8 products: The point database *project.pdf* is called *points.mdb*.

Setting Up the Point Database

When you start a new Autodesk Land Desktop project, you are prompted to create the point database before placing any points in the drawing.

Create Point Data	abase	×
Project:	tutorial project	
Point File:	c:\land projects 3\tutorial	
Poir	nt Description Field Size: 32 Use Point Names: Point Name Field Size: 16	
	OK <u>H</u> elp	

Creating the point database involves

- Setting the character limit for point descriptions (2 to 254).
- Choosing whether to use point names, and then setting the character limit for point names (2 to 254).

After you create the point database, you can choose the database open mode by running the Point Database Setup command. To run this command, choose the Point Database Setup command from the Points ➤ Point Management menu.

Point Database Setup	×
Project: tutorial project	
Point File: c:\land projects 3\tutorial	
Point Descriptions: 32 Character Maximum	
Point Names: 16 Character Maximum	
Open Mode	
C Close	
C Open as Single-User	
Open as Multi-User Other Users	
UK Cancel <u>H</u> elp	

You can open the database so that only you have write access to it, or you can open it in multi-user mode so that multiple people can open and write to the point database.

If other people are using the point database, then you cannot switch from multi-user to single-user mode until the other people close the point database. To identify the users currently using the point database, click Other Users.

Establishing Point Settings



Changing the Point Settings Before you create or import any COGO points into a drawing, you should set up the point settings.

NOTE Changing the point settings does not affect points that are already inserted into the drawing. To update points in the drawing with changes to the point settings (such as marker style or automatic leaders, for example), re-insert the points into the drawing.

Changing the Point Creation Settings

The Point Creation settings affect how COGO points are created in a project and how you are prompted for information as you create points. For example, you can create points with automatically generated elevations, or you can choose to be prompted for elevations. You can create points that are numbered sequentially, or you can choose to manually number the points that you create.



To display the Point Settings dialog box, choose Point Settings from the Points menu.

When you import points, the Insert To Drawing As Created setting is used, but certain point settings, such as elevation, point number, and description, are not applied. The Import Points command uses the information in the file that you are importing.

If more than one person working on a project over a network is creating points, then each person can adjust the current point number to avoid confusion. One person could set 100 as the current point number, and another person could set 200 as the current point number. The same point number cannot be used twice in a project.

Changing the Point Marker and Point Text Settings

When you create, insert, or import points into a drawing, the appearance of the points varies depending on the Point Marker and Point Text settings.

Use the Marker tab to control the style and size of the point marker (the symbol that marks the location of the point in the drawing).

Use a custom marker	📡 Point Settings	×
or the AutoCAD POINT node style.	Create Insert Update Coords Description Keys Marker Text Preferences Specify the Size and Shape of the Point Marker Symbol.	1
Choose a custom marker style for the point node.	• Use Custom Marker • Use AutoCAD POINT for Marker • Custom Marker Style • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	
Set the marker size relative to the screen or an absolute size.	Custom Marker Size C Size <u>R</u> elative To Screen Size In <u>A</u> bsolute Units Size: 5 Units	
Align the marker with the point text rotation.	Align Marker With Text Rotation OK Cancel Help	

Use the Text tab to control how the point text is displayed.

	👺 Point Settings	×
Control the visibility of number, elevation, and description.	Create Insert Update Coords Description Keys Marker Text Preferences	
Show full or raw point descriptions.	C Show Raw Descriptions	
Set the test size rela-	Style and Size	
tive to the screen or	Text Style: STANDARD	
an absolute size.	C Size <u>R</u> elative To Screen	
Create leaders auto-		
moving point text.	OK Cancel <u>H</u> elp	

Key Concepts

- If you set the point marker size to a percentage of the screen, then the points are always the same size on screen regardless of the zoom level.
- To change the AutoCAD POINT node style, use DDPTYPE.
- By default, Autodesk Land Desktop uses northing and easting coordinates to represent points in space. A northing coordinate is equivalent to a Y coordinate; an easting is equivalent to an X coordinate. From the Coords tab in the Point Settings dialog box, you can choose a different method of coordinate display.
- When you change the point settings using the Point Settings command, points already in the drawing are not affected.
- To change the point marker settings of points already in the drawing, use the Display Properties command on the Edit Points submenu. You can also select points in the drawing, right-click, and select Display Properties from the shortcut menu.

Creating Points

Use Autodesk Land Desktop point creation commands to create points in many ways, such as by northing/easting, along an object, by turned angle, and so on. You can create points at intersections, on a slope, on alignments, by referencing a surface, and by interpolating.

- Points created by using the commands on the Points menu are always added to the point database.
- Point prompts can differ, depending on how you set up the Point Creation Settings. Use these settings to assign elevations and descriptions to points.
- To create points by referencing geodetic directions, you must first choose the current zone for the drawing from the Drawing Setup dialog box.

St	eps	Use Search to locate
1	From the Points menu, choose Point Settings to display the Point Settings dialog box.	
2	Click the Create tab to change the Point Creation settings. These settings determine the data you are prompted for, the data created automatically for the points, and whether the points you create are inserted into the drawing.	Changing the Point Creation Settings
3	Click OK to close the Point Settings dialog box.	
4	 From the Points menu, choose Create Points ➤ Northing/Easting. Type the northing of the point you want to create. Type the easting of the point you want to create. Type the description and elevation for the point if you are prompted for them. 	Creating Points at Northing/Easting Coordinates
5	Continue to type the northing and easting for additional points, or press ENTER to end the command.	

Importing Points



Importing and Exporting

Importing Point Data

Points

A quick and effective way to place points in a project is to import them. You can use the Import Points command to import the following:

- Point ASCII files.
 - Data from a Microsoft Access database file.
 - Points from another project point database.

For example, if a surveyor collected point data by using a data collector, the data can be downloaded as an ASCII file and then imported into the Autodesk Land Desktop project by doing the following:

- 1 Download the point data from a data collector as an ASCII text file using data collector software.
- 2 Create an import/export format that specifies information in the ASCII file.
- **3** Import the points using the import/export format.

All points you import are added to the project point database.

To create an import/export format and import points

Steps

Use Search to locate

 From the Points menu, choose Import/Export Creating a Point Import/ Points ➤ Format Manager to display the Format Manager dialog box.



- **2** You can choose from several default import/export formats. You can select one and then click View to see how the format is set up.
- 3 Click Add to display the Select Format Type dialog box.

User Point File User Point Database Cancel	×		Format Manager - Select Format Type
Cancel		OK	User Point File
		Cancel	
Help		Help	

4 Choose the type of import/export format you want to create. For example, to import an ASCII file, select User Point File and click OK.

To create an import/export format and import points (continued)

Steps

Use Search to locate

The Point File Format dialog box is displayed.

<mark> Point File</mark>	Format							
Format Name:	New	Format					DK	
Default Ext.: .txt		-			Cancel			
Columnated		Comment Tag:					<u>L</u> oad	
C Delimited By:		Read no more than		0	points	<u> </u>	<u>P</u> arse	
		🗖 Sample	every	0	points	H	lelp	
Coordinat	e Zone Trans	form						
Zone:								
Zupuseds	Zupuseds	Zupused	Zupused	Zupuseds	Zupuseds	Zunuseds		
(unused)	(unuseu)		- Cunuseuz	- Cunuseuz	- Cunuseuz		_ <u>≺unu</u> 	
							▼	

5 Click the column headings (the <unused> buttons) to setablish the format.

Select Column Name Dialog Box

The Select Column Name dialog box is displayed.

S Format Manage	er - Select Column Name	×
Select the name of If the column contai	this column from the list of available names. ns data that is not used, choose <unused>.</unused>	OK Cancel
Column Name:	Kunused> ■	Help

To create an import/export format and import points (continued)							
Ste	eps	Use	<u>S</u> earch	to locate			
6	Select the name of the column. For example, if the first column in an ASCII file contains the point number, then the first column must be set up for point numbers. Each column must be unique—after you use one column name option, it is removed from the list of available column names.						
	in the ASCII file, then click Load to load the ASCII file into the dialog box so you can see the information that it contains.	he information ASCII file into on that it					
7	Click OK to return to the Point File Format dialog box.						
8	Select the Delimited By option and choose the file delimit method. For example, if you set up the ASCII file so that each piece of information is separated by commas, then type a comma (,) in the Delimit box.						
9	Name the format, and then close the Point File Format dialog box.						
10	Click Close to close the Format Manager dialog box.						
11	From the Points menu, choose Point Settings and click the Create tab.	Add Drav	ing Poin ving as	ts to the Points Are			
	To import the points into only the database, clear the Insert to Drawing as Created check box. This significantly increases the speed of the import. You can specify the points that you can later bring into the drawing from the project point database by using the Insert Points to Drawing command from the Points menu.	Crec	ıted				
To create an import/export format and import points (continued)

Steps

Use Search to locate

12 From the Points menu, choose Import/ Export Points ➤ Import Options to display the

COGO Database Import Options dialog box.

COGO Database Import Options		×
Options when Importing to the COGO Da What to do if the point numbers are supplied by the source: What to do when point numbers need to be assigned to the points: What to do when the point number already exists in the point database:	tabase C Use C Ignore C Add an offset: C Use next point number C Sequence from: C Renumber C Merge C Overwrite	OK Cancel Help
		,

13 Use the options in the COGO Database Import Options dialog box to determine the following:

Changing the COGO Database Import Options

- How to resolve duplicate incoming points.
- What to do when point numbers are assigned by the source file.
- What to do when point numbers need to be assigned.

Click OK to continue.

14 From the Points menu, choose Import/Export Import Points ➤ Import Points to display the Format Manager - CC Import Points dialog box.

Importing Points into the COGO Point Database

🔊 Format Manager - I	mport Points		×
Format:	Autodesk Uploadable File	- 0	OK
Source File:		Ē	Cancel
Add Points to Point (aroup.		Help
		✓	Advanced

- **15** Select the format and the source file that you want to import.
- **16** Select the Add Points to Point Group check box to add the imported points to a point group, then select or create a point group.

			-			
ΓO	create an im	nort/evnor	t format an	d import	noints (continued
	ci cace ani ini	poracipor	c ioi illac all	u inipor c	pointes	continuca)

Steps

Use Search to locate

17 Click OK to display the Import Options dialog box.

18 Click OK to import the points.

Coordinate Zone Transformations

You can perform coordinate zone transformations while you import points. For example, if you import points based on latitude and longitude into a drawing that uses a Universal Transverse Mercator (UTM) zone, then you can specify the zone from which the points are being imported. When the points are imported, they are converted to the drawing's coordinate zone. For more information about performing coordinate zone transformations see "Performing Geodetic Transformations on Points" on page 123.

Using Point Filters

When you are using an Autodesk Land Desktop command that prompts you to select a point in the drawing, you can

- Select any point on the screen by using object snaps or by typing *X*,*Y* coordinates.
- Use an Autodesk Land Desktop point filter.

Point filters make it easy for you to accurately retrieve coordinate points from the point database or to accurately select points from the drawing. Point filters are a letter preceded by a period that you can type at any "Select Points" prompt.

- Type .p, press ENTER, and then type a specific point number.
- Type .g, press ENTER, and then select the point in the drawing.
- Type .n, press ENTER, and then type the point's northing and easting coordinates.

For example, you could use the .g graphical selection filter to select any part of a point object on screen. This retrieves the exact coordinates of the point object from the point database.

- Point filters remain active until you turn them off by typing the filter again, or until you select another filter.
- You can use the .p filter to select points that are in either the drawing or in the project database.
- Points must be displayed in the drawing in order to use the .g graphical selection filter.

Т	To use point filters							
St	eps	Use Search to locate						
1	Select a command that prompts you to select points. For example, from the Lines/Curves menu, choose Line. NOTE The filters work only for Autodesk Land Desktop commands. They do not work for AutoCAD commands such as LINE.	Drawing a Line by Selecting Start and End Points						
2	At the Starting point prompt, type .p to turn on the point number filter.	Using Point Filters to Select Points						
	The command line changes to a prompt for a Point number.							
3	Type the number of the point at which you want to start the line.							
	The command line prompts you for another point number.							
4	If you want to select the next point by selecting it from the screen, then type .g .							
	The command line prompts you to select a point object, and the cursor turns into a pickbox.							
5	Select the next point from the screen using the pickbox.							
6	Continue to select points, or press ENTER to end the command and draw the line.							
	NOTE You can turn off a point filter by retyping the same filter on the command line.							

Editing Points

The recommended method to edit COGO points is to use the Edit Points commands on the Points menu. These commands update the project point file and the points in the drawing. Use these commands to automatically update the point database to match the graphic changes, or to edit points in the project point database that are not visible in the drawing.

NOTE You can also use AutoCAD commands, such as MOVE or ERASE, to edit the points in the drawing. However, by default these commands do not update the project point database. To update the project point database after using these commands, use the Modify Project command from the Points ➤ Check Points menu.

- The commands in the Edit Points menu, such as Points ➤ Edit Points ➤ Erase, change both the drawing and database simultaneously. AutoCAD editing commands, such as ERASE, change only the drawing and not the database.
- You can lock points to protect them against unwanted edits by choosing Points ➤ Lock/Unlock Points ➤ Lock Points.
- To edit points by using MOVE, select the Allow Points to be MOVE'd in Drawing check box on the Update tab in the Point Settings dialog box. To update the project point database, you must also select the Update Point Database After MOVE Command check box.

Т	To edit points using Autodesk Land Desktop commands							
St	eps	Use Search to locate						
1	With points in the drawing (or in the point database only), choose a point editing command, such as Move, from the Points \rightarrow Edit Points menu.	Editing Points						
2	Select the points you want to move.							
3	Select a base point and a point of displacement to move the point(s).							

To edit points using CAD commands

St	eps	Use Search to locate
1	With points in the drawing, select an editing command, such as ERASE, and select the point to edit.	Erase Command
2	After you edit the points, choose Modify Project from the Points \succ Check Points menu to update the project with the changes that you made to the points in the drawing.	Updating the Project Point Database with Drawing Point Information
3	In the Modify Project Database Points from Drawing dialog box, select the options to modify the project, and then click OK.	

Selecting Points to Edit

When you use the Autodesk Land Desktop point editing commands, you can select points using a point selection dialog box. This style of dialog box is used for many commands on the Edit Points submenu, like Edit Points, Datum, Move, and Copy.

This point selection dialog box has been updated with new features for Autodesk Land Desktop 3, allowing you to do the following:

- Select all project points, select specific points by using the tabs, or select points by typing a point list directly in the Point List box.
- Select points by specifying raw description filters and point groups.
- Include and exclude points based on point numbers, elevations, and descriptions, using separate Include and Exclude tabs.
- Turn case sensitive matching on and off. When case sensitive matching is turned off, a description typed as "perimeter" will select all points with the description "perimeter," "Perimeter," "PERIMETER," and so on.
- View a summary of your selection on the Summary tab.
- Insert points into the drawing, remove points from the drawing, erase points, lock, and unlock points, right from the dialog box. These features are also now available from within the Point Group Manager.

In addition, for the Edit Points command (select Points \succ Edit Points \succ Edit Points) you can now edit multiple points at a time. Select the points to edit, right-click in the column you want to edit, and then select Edit, as shown in the following illustration.

<mark>ခဲ့ E</mark> Printi	<mark>dit Points</mark> ing						
Point List: 1,10-49,1001-2701							
(🗧 Enable Fil	tering 🔽 🤅	Case-sensitive Matchir	ng		Build List	
6	List All Poi	ints				Create Group	
	C. Delet Link	Г., 1 ., .				sieate droup	
	Foint List	criuy					
B	aw Desc Ma	tching Point Group	s Include Exclude	Summary	Edit		
Ν	lumber	Northing	Easting	Elevation	Raw Desc	Full Desc 🔺	
4	▶ 1	4838708.0999	315764.5004	0.000	site base pt.	site base pt.	
4	▶ 10	4839084.2941	315518.0629	128.138	BM-hydrant	BM-hydrant	
4	11	4839057.5743	315790.8575	Edit		ument	
4	12	4838660.2781	315781.8809	L UI	- 7	headwall	
4	13	4838653.1504	315762.6220	Insert In	to Drawing		
4	14	4839101.7600	315657.9200	Bernove	From Drawin	Headwal	
4	▶ 15	4838928.5700	315901.1200	Frase	r tom Drawing	valve	
4	▶ 16	4839087.3361	315665.9901	LIGSE		el	
4	▶ 17	4839031.7964	315666.3926	Lock		el	
4	▶ 18	4839048.9594	315667.7210	Unlock		el	
4	▶ 19	4839010.6916	315669.1408	Drint Col	hum	el	
4	▶ 20	4839001.6623	315677.5537	Print 36	.up	el	
4	▶ 21	4839049.8999	315679.3707	Print Dra	u iou	el	
4	► 22	4839082.9408	315680.6916	Print Field	view	el	
4	23	4838994.8766	315683.8759	Print to r	-lie	el	
4	24	4838984.6258	315690.4915	Clear Se	election	el	
4	25	4839049.4839	315691.1697	124.386	Lot_el	Lot_el 🚽	
I						•	
	Reset		ОК		Cancel	Help	

When you select the Edit command, the following dialog box is displayed, which you can use to enter the new value to apply to all the selected points.

Enter New Value F	or	×
Elevation		
OK	Cancel	Help

To select multiple points on the Edit tab (or the List tab of any of the other point selection dialog boxes, or the Point Group Manager), you can do any of the following:

- Hold down CTRL and click non-sequential points in the list.
- Hold down SHIFT and click the first point in a sequence you want to select, followed by the last point in the sequence you want to select.
- Click in a blank area outside the columns and drag your cursor over the points you want to select, as shown in the following illustration:

N	umber	Northing	Easting	Elevation	
ф	1	4838708.0999	315764.5004	0.000	
ф	10	4839084.2941	315518.0629	128.138	
¢	11	4839057.5743	315790.8575	118.839	
ф	12	4838660.2781	315781.8809	87.766	
¢	13	4838653.1504	315762.6220	92.196	
¢	14	4839101.7600	315657.9200	127.107	

- You can use the point selection dialog box to select points for all of the commands on the Points ➤ Edit Points menu except for Unerase. This dialog box is also used for the List Points, Insert Points to Drawing, Remove from Drawing, Radial Stakeout, and Consecutive Stakeout commands.
- To clear a point selection, right-click and select Clear Selection.
- When no points are selected on the Edit tab (for the Edit Points command only), you can right-click a column heading and select Edit to edit all of the points in the column at once.

Point Synchronization



Updating the Project Point Database with Drawing Point Information In some situations the project points may not match the drawing points. For example, the project database will not match the drawing points if you do any of the following:

- Use commands such as ERASE or COPY to modify the points.
- Edit points in the drawing and database, and then quit the drawing without saving it.
- Restore an old version of a drawing.
- Edit points in one drawing and then open another drawing that contains the same points.

To change the drawing so that it matches the project point database, or to change project points to match the drawing, you can use the Check Points commands on the Points menu. You can use these commands to

- Add project points to a drawing, or remove them from a drawing, so the drawing matches the project.
- Add points in the drawing to the project, or remove points from the project that are not in the drawing, so the project matches the drawing.

For example, if more than one person is working on the project and adding points to the point database, then the points in the drawing may not match the project points. You can update the drawing with the project points by using the Modify Drawing command from the Points \succ Check Points menu. The following illustration shows the options available when you use this command:

Modify Drawing Points from Project Database	×
Modify Drawing Points:	
✓ Change points in drawing	
Change description key symbols	
E Reunite key symbol with point	
Add/Remove Points:	
Add all points to drawing	
Remove points from drawing	
Echo status to screen	
OK Cancel <u>H</u> elp	

Working with Point Groups



Point Groups - concept

Point groups are named collections of point numbers that you can select when you edit and insert points and when you use points as surface data in the Terrain Model Explorer. By saving a collection of points to a group, you do not need to manually select the points each time you perform an operation. A point group does not store point information; the point database always handles point storage. The point group feature can help you organize the points into smaller, more manageable groups.

To create and manage point groups, use the Point Group Manager, shown in the following illustration. Access the Point Group Manager by choosing Point Group Manager from the Points ➤ Point Management menu.

Point Group Manager							<u>_ D ×</u>
Manager Help							
* * * * * 	:						
🖅 🛷 1control	1	√um	Northing	Easting	Elevation	Raw D	Full Desc
🗄 🛷 Area1	۰	10	4839084.2941	315518.0629	128.138	BM-hydrant	BM-hydrant
⊞	\$	11	4839057.5743	315790.8575	118.839	monument	monument
	٠	12	4838660.2781	315781.8809	87.766	BM-headwall	BM-headwall
	۰	13	4838653.1504	315762.6220	92.196	SIB	SIB
	¢	14	4839101.7600	315657.9200	127.107	BM -Headwal	BM -Headwal
	۰	15	4838928.5700	315901.1200	109.960	BM-valve	BM-valve
	•						Þ

New point group features in Autodesk Land Desktop 3 include

- Persistent Properties: Point groups now have persistent properties. This means that if points that match the properties of a point group are modified in some way, or if points were added to or removed from the point database, you can be alerted to update the point group. By using the Check Status, Show Changes, and Update features, you can check for changes to the point groups, show exactly which points that have changed, and update the point groups.
- Point Selection by Raw Description Matching: You can now select the points to include in a point group by specifying raw description matches from the Raw Desc Matching tab. The list that appears on this tab is derived from the defined description key codes in the project. All points in the point database with raw descriptions that match the selected raw description are included in the point group.

NOTE The list on the Raw Desc Matching tab is derived from the defined description keys in the project, but this tab does not use Description Key settings, such as the ascending/descending sort order setting. Be sure to check the point list derived from selected raw descriptions, especially when using wildcard characters.

- Saving To and Loading From a Prototype: You can now save a standard point group file to a prototype that you can load into other projects.
- Simplified Point Selection Methods: The Create Point Group dialog box now has separate Include and Exclude tabs for specifying the points to include or exclude from the point group. A new Summary tab summarizes the properties you define for the group and lists the total number of points in the group.
- Additional Point Commands: Insert points into the drawing, remove points from the drawing, erase points, lock, and unlock points in the Point Group Manager dialog box. Select the points and right-click to display these options in the shortcut menu.

- You can show additional columns of data in the Point Group Manager. To show all columns (including point name, grid northing, and grid easting, which are not shown by default), right-click a column heading and choose Show All Columns from the shortcut menu.
- When you assign overrides, point groups can override existing point data that is contained in the point database.
- From within the Point Group Manager, you can lock a point group to prevent it from being updated. You can also lock the points in a point group so they cannot be edited.

Т	To create point groups							
St	eps	Use Search to locate						
1	From the Points menu, choose Point Management ➤ Point Group Manager to display the Point Group Manager dialog box.	Creating a Point Group						

2 Click to display the Create Point Group dialog box.

🗳 Create Point Gro	iup	×
Group Name:		
Description:		1
Point List:		Í -
	Case-sensitive Matching	
Raw Desc Matchir	g Include Exclude Overrides Summary	
	No Items Selected For Display	
	OK Cancel Apply Help	

3 Type a name and description for the point group.

4	Select the points for the point group by using the Raw Desc Matching tab, the Include tab, and the Exclude tab.	
	Click Apply to update the Point List box at the top of the dialog box. All the points in the Point List box are included in the point group when you click OK.	
5	Define overrides for the point groups by using the Overrides tab.	Point Group Overrides
6	Click the Summary tab to view a summary of the properties you defined for the point group.	
7	Click OK to create the point group and return to the Point Group Manager.	



Checking the Status of Point Groups

Checking Point Group Status, Showing Changes, and Updating Point Groups

Because point groups have persistent properties, you can check to see if point groups require updating. A point group may require updating if

- The properties (such as elevation or description) of points in the project have changed so they now match point group properties.
- The properties of points have changed so they no longer match point group properties.
- New points have been added to the point database that match point group properties.
- Points that match point group properties have been deleted from the point database.

To see if a point group requires updating, you can check point group status. There are two ways to check point group status:

- Select the Check Status on Startup check box in the Point Settings dialog box to automatically check point group status when the Point Group Manager is opened.
- Use the Check Status options in the Point Group Manager to manually check the point group status.

When the point group status is checked, the point group properties are compared with the point database. If the point group is out-of-date, the point group icon changes to *****.

To see why a point group is out-of-date, use the Show Changes commands. The Show Changes commands provide a detailed list that describes the points that need to be added to or removed from the point group. The following illustration shows that points 16-20 should be removed from the LOTS point group because these points no longer match the point group properties (their descriptions were changed).

Changed Point Groups		×
* ?		
Pollpdate Point Group(s)	Add/Remove	List
LOTS	Remove	16-20
	Changed Point Groups	Changed Point Groups

After you review this list, you can update the point groups from within the Show Changes dialog box by clicking the Update Point Group(s) icon. You can also use the Update All Point Groups command to update the point groups without reviewing the changes.

Point Group Overrides



Point Group Overrides

You can use the Overrides tab in the Create Point Group dialog box to override existing point data that is contained in the point database.

There are two ways to override point data in point groups:

- You can override the point label style, description, elevation, or name with a single fixed value that is used for all points in the group.
- You can specify an XDRef name to substitute data that is in a Microsoft[®] Access database on a point-by-point basis. Use this option to override each point with a different value.

The following illustration shows the Overrides tab in the Create Point Group dialog box. Fixed overrides are applied to the point group Elevation and Point Label Style properties, and an XDRef override is applied to the Description property.

Raw Desc Matching Inc	lude Exclude Overrides Summary
Property	Override
 Elevation 	100.000000
 Description 	🔖 DESC1
Point Label Style	🦉 active desckey

Overrides apply to a point group whenever you reference the point group. For example, if you include a point group that has elevation overrides in a surface definition, the elevation override values are used in the surface. If you insert a point group with description overrides into a drawing, then the description overrides are used for the raw descriptions of the points. If the override description matches a description key code, then description key substitution can occur.

When you use overrides, no substitution is ever applied to the point database itself.

Working with Description Keys



Using Description Keys

Description Keys, Point Markers, and Point Labels

Using Description Parameters in Description Keys You can use *description keys* to associate symbols with points and to control point and symbol layers. Use the Description Key Manager, shown in the following illustration, to define new description keys and create new description key files.

Description Key Manag	er				_ 0	×
Manager Help						
DEFAULT	Code	Format	Point Layer	Symbol Block N	Symbol Layer	
	100	MH(HYDRO)	LOCNO	smh	EXIST	_
	101	MH(OTHER)	LOCNO	smh	EXIST	
	12	BOREHOLE	MISCNO	bm	BOREHOLE	
	13	COREHOLE	MISCNO	bm	COREHOLE	
	14	POST	MISCNO	bound	XBASE	
1	15	TV-LOC	LOC-NO	<none></none>	LOCATE	•

By using description keys, you can

- Insert symbols to visually distinguish the different types of points in the drawing.
- Specify layers on which to insert the points and the symbols.
- Scale and rotate symbols that are inserted with the points.
- Replace a "raw" (original) point description with a full description.

When you define description keys, you assign a description key code, a description format (or "full" description), a symbol, a point layer, and a symbol layer. When you create or import a point with a raw description that matches a description key code, the point is placed in the drawing with the symbol, the point and symbol are placed on the specified layers, and the raw description is replaced with the full description.

When you create points, you are prompted for the point number, point elevation, and point description. A description key is essentially a replacement for the point description. For example, if you type **TREE** as the description for a tree point, and if TREE has been defined as a description key and it has a symbol associated with it, then a tree symbol is created for that point.

Autodesk Land Desktop includes many symbols that you can use for description keys. Imperial and metric symbols are stored in subfolders of the following folder:

c:\Program Files\Land Desktop 3\data\symbol manager

You can also create a custom symbol to use in the drawing, and then you can use WBLOCK to save the block to the symbol folder.

If you edit description keys, you can update the drawing with the new settings by using the Modify Drawing command from the Points \succ Check Points menu.

Description Key Usage, Point Markers, and Point Labels

To fully implement description key substitution in a drawing, you must format and use a label style that is set up to use description keys. The label style may insert only a symbol, or it can label the point with point number, full description, and any other point value.

When you use point markers, the full description can be substituted for the raw description, but symbols are not inserted unless you use a point label style.

The following illustrations show the relationship between point markers, point labels, and description keys.

- In the top illustration, the point label style inserts a symbol only (no text label), and the point marker text is visible.
- In the bottom illustration, the point label style inserts a symbol and creates a text label. The text label expands the description key code (dshrub) to its full description (Deciduous Shrub). Point marker text is turned off.



The point label style controls whether description key matching is on or off, which description key file to use, whether full descriptions are substituted for

raw descriptions, and whether description key symbols are inserted. It also controls whether the point marker text is turned off when a label is created.

The following illustration shows the options on the Point Label Styles tab (select Labels \succ Edit Label Styles) that control the description keys.



Description Keys and Point Settings

If you create points manually, and you want to use description key substitution, then you should select the Manual option under Descriptions on the Create tab of the Point Settings dialog box, unless all the points have the same description key code. When you are prompted for a point description, type the description key code.

You do not need to select this setting if you are importing points from a file.

Description Parameters

When surveyors enter data in the field, they can use *description parameters*. Description parameters are entries, separated by a space, that expand the description of a point. For example, TREE OAK 7 is a description that has three parameters.

By formatting a description key to use description parameters, you can maintain but reorder the point description information. For example, you can set up a description key that uses description parameters to convert the raw description "TREE OAK 7" to "7-inch Oak Tree."

- Description keys are saved to external files. Each project can have multiple description key files, which can be shared with other users across a network. All drawings within a project reference the same description key files.
- You can save description key files to prototypes so that you can add them into new and existing projects.
- You can use wild card characters when you create description keys. Wild cards expand the flexibility of description keys. For example, if you create a description key named T*, then any point whose description starts with T, such as Topo, T-1, or T2, is assigned the description key symbol.

Creating a Utility Pole Description Key

The following example shows how you can create a description key using a symbol included with Autodesk Land Desktop.

The example describes how to create points that represent utility poles using a description prefix "UP." By using wild card characters, you do not need to create a description key for each point description—you create only a description key that references the "UP" prefix.

Т	o create descript	tion keys				
St	eps					Use Search to locate
1	From the Points m the Point Settings	ienu, choo dialog bo>	se Point Se «.	ttings to	display	
2	Click the Insert tak).				Changing the Point Insertion Settings
3	Under Search Path click Browse, and	for Symb locate the	ol Block dra following fo	wing file older.	S,	
	C. (Program Files (LC	ina Deskio	b S \uuuu \sy		nuger (co	yo
4	Under Point Labeli Label Style When	ing, select Inserting P	the Use the oints check	e Current box.	Point	
	NOTE In subsequence style to use for the	ient steps, e new poin	you create ts.	the poin	t label	
5	Click the Create ta	ıb.				Changing the Point Creation Settings
6	Under Description	s, select M	lanual.			
7	Click OK to close t	he Point S	ettings dial	og box.		
8	From the Points m Management ➤ D Description Key M	enu, choo escription lanager dia	se Point Key Manag alog box.	er to disp	play the	Using the Description Key Manager
	Description Key Man	ager				
	Manager Help					
			1-		1	
	DEFAULT	Code	Format	Point Layer	Symbol Bloc	
		100	MH(HYDRU)	LOCNO	smh	EXIST
		12	BOBEHOLE	MISCNO	hm	BOBEHOLE
		13	COREHOLE	MISCNO	bm	COREHOLE
		14	POST	MISCNO	bound	XBASE
		15	TV-LOC	LOC-NO	<none></none>	LOCATE

Ste	ps	Use Search to locate
•	Click 🏶 to display the Create Description Key dialog box.	Creating a Description Key
	🕸 Create Description Key	×
	DescKey Code: General Scale/Rotate Symbol Description Format: Point Layer: Symbol Insertion Symbol Block Name: Knone> Symbol Layer:	OK Cancel Help
0	For this example, type UP * as the DescKey Code. The asterisk (*) matches any point description that starts with UP. For example, UP5A or UP5B.	
10	For this example, type UP * as the DescKey Code. The asterisk (*) matches any point description that starts with UP. For example, UP5A or UP5B. Type \$ * as the Description Format. These wildcard characters keep the point description the same as when you enter it, so you can distinguish between UP5A and UP5B. However, you can assign a new, full description and this description would then be used for all the utility poles. Type PTS_UP as the Point Layer. This places the point objects on the PTS_UP layer.	Using Wildcard Characters in Description Keys
10	For this example, type UP * as the DescKey Code. The asterisk (*) matches any point description that starts with UP. For example, UP5A or UP5B. Type \$ * as the Description Format. These wildcard characters keep the point description the same as when you enter it, so you can distinguish between UP5A and UP5B. However, you can assign a new, full description and this description would then be used for all the utility poles. Type PTS_UP as the Point Layer. This places the point objects on the PTS_UP layer. From the Symbol Block Name list_select U_POLE	Using Wildcard Characters in Description Keys
0 1 2 3	For this example, type UP * as the DescKey Code. The asterisk (*) matches any point description that starts with UP. For example, UP5A or UP5B. Type \$ * as the Description Format. These wildcard characters keep the point description the same as when you enter it, so you can distinguish between UP5A and UP5B. However, you can assign a new, full description and this description would then be used for all the utility poles. Type PTS_UP as the Point Layer. This places the point objects on the PTS_UP layer. From the Symbol Block Name list, select U_POLE. In the Symbol Layer box, type the layer for the symbol.	Using Wildcard Character in Description Keys
0 1 2 3 4 5	For this example, type UP* as the DescKey Code. The asterisk (*) matches any point description that starts with UP. For example, UP5A or UP5B. Type \$* as the Description Format. These wildcard characters keep the point description the same as when you enter it, so you can distinguish between UP5A and UP5B. However, you can assign a new, full description and this description would then be used for all the utility poles. Type PTS_UP as the Point Layer. This places the point objects on the PTS_UP layer. From the Symbol Block Name list, select U_POLE. In the Symbol Layer box, type the layer for the symbol. Click OK, and then close the Description Key Manager dialog box.	Using Wildcard Character in Description Keys
10 11 12 13 14 15	For this example, type UP* as the DescKey Code. The asterisk (*) matches any point description that starts with UP. For example, UP5A or UP5B. Type \$* as the Description Format. These wildcard characters keep the point description the same as when you enter it, so you can distinguish between UP5A and UP5B. However, you can assign a new, full description and this description would then be used for all the utility poles. Type PTS_UP as the Point Layer. This places the point objects on the PTS_UP layer. From the Symbol Block Name list, select U_POLE. In the Symbol Layer box, type the layer for the symbol. Click OK, and then close the Description Key Manager dialog box. From the Labels menu, choose Edit Label Styles and then click the Point Label Style tab.	Using Wildcard Characters in Description Keys
10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17	For this example, type UP* as the DescKey Code. The asterisk (*) matches any point description that starts with UP. For example, UP5A or UP5B. Type \$* as the Description Format. These wildcard characters keep the point description the same as when you enter it, so you can distinguish between UP5A and UP5B. However, you can assign a new, full description and this description would then be used for all the utility poles. Type PTS_UP as the Point Layer. This places the point objects on the PTS_UP layer. From the Symbol Block Name list, select U_POLE. In the Symbol Layer box, type the layer for the symbol. Click OK, and then close the Description Key Manager dialog box. From the Labels menu, choose Edit Label Styles and then click the Point Label Style tab. In the Name box, type Desckey style.	Using Wildcard Characters in Description Keys

Steps	Use Search to locate
19 After {Number} in the text box, press ENTER to insert a carriage return.	
20 In the Data list, choose Description and click the Text button.	
21 Under Description Keys, select the DescKey Matching On check box, select the description key file, and select the Insert DescKey Symbol check box.	
22 Click Save and then click OK.	
23 From the Labels menu, choose Show Dialog Bar and make the Desckey point label style that you created the current point label style.	Selecting the Current Labe Style from the Style Properties Dialog Bar
24 From the Points menu, choose Create Points ➤ Manual.	Creating Points at Selectea Coordinates
25 Select a location in the drawing for the new point.	
26 When you are prompted for the description, type UP1A . The description, UP1A, and the utility pole symbol are placed with the point, and the point and the symbol are placed on the specified layers.	

Working with External Data References

Search Help for...

Using External Data References If you want to override data in the point database when you use point groups, or if you want to label points with information other than that which is in the point database, then you can use External Data References (known as *XDRefs*). An XDRef is a link to a column of data in a Microsoft Access database.

For example, if you have borehole data with which you want to label the points, you can add the data to a Microsoft Access file, create the XDRefs, and then label the points with the data. Or, you can use the point object as a database display object for information other than point data. For example, you can label the point or override point data with database information, such as the abutting names and addresses or parcel areas. You must create an XDRef for each column of data that you want to use.

Key Concepts

- Data substitution in point groups with XDRefs is limited to point name, point label style, description, and elevation. However, you can add any data to point labels.
- XDRefs never actually change the point database information. They only substitute information for that which exists in the database or they append data to the labels. However, if you use elevations from an external file, then those elevations, not the elevations within the point database, are used when creating a surface.
- XDRefs can be made only to Microsoft Access databases. The Access database must be saved in Microsoft Access 97 format.
- The XDRef database, XDRefs.mdb, which contains the links to the columns in external databases, is stored in the following folder and is used for all XDRefs in the project:

To use XDRefs to label points Use Search to locate Steps 1 Create a new project based on the default imperial or Creating a Project metric prototype. 2 Select Map ➤ Database ➤ Data Sources ➤ Attach to display the Attach Data Source dialog box. **3** From the Files of Type list, select Microsoft Access Files (*.mdb), and select SampleUserDB.mdb in the following folder: c:\Land Projects 3\<project name>\cogo\UserDb This sample file is copied into every new project that you create that is based on the default prototypes. 4 If the Map Project Workspace is not displayed, select Map ➤ Utilities ➤ Project Workspace. 5 From Project Workspace, right-click SampleTable1 and Using the Project select Edit Table. Add some sample description data to the Workspace DESC1 column for points 1, 2, and 3, and then close the file. NOTE The only column that is required in an XDRef table is the point number (PNO) column. 6 From Project Workspace, right-click SampleUserDB, and choose Detach from the shortcut menu. When prompted, click Yes to detach the database.

c:\Land Projects 3\<project name>\cogo

Ste	eps	Use Search to locate
7	From the Points menu in Autodesk Land Desktop, choose Point Management ➤ XDRef Manager to display the XDRef Manager dialog box.	Using External Data References
8	From the Manager menu, choose Create XDRef to display the Create External Data Reference dialog box.	Creating an External Data Reference
	☆ Create External Data Reference 🛛 🔀	
	Name: OK Database Name: Cancel Table Name: Image: I	
	Francisco de la Britania Barbia de la Carta da Carta de C	
10	For example, if you are linking to description data for boreholes, you can name the XDRef "Borehole-Desc1." O Click 🔁 to select the database.	
10	For example, if you are linking to description data for boreholes, you can name the XDRef "Borehole-Desc1." Click to select the database. Select SampleUserDB.mdb in the following folder.	
10	For example, if you are linking to description data for boreholes, you can name the XDRef "Borehole-Desc1." O Click 🔁 to select the database. Select SampleUserDB.mdb in the following folder. c:\Land Projects 3\ <project name="">\cogo\UserDb</project>	
10	For example, if you are linking to description data for boreholes, you can name the XDRef "Borehole-Desc1." Click C to select the database. Select SampleUserDB.mdb in the following folder. c:\Land Projects 3\ <project name="">\cogo\UserDb After you select the database, the Table Name and Column Name fields become active.</project>	
10 11	For example, if you are linking to description data for boreholes, you can name the XDRef "Borehole-Desc1." Click is to select the database. Select SampleUserDB.mdb in the following folder. c:\Land Projects 3\ <project name="">\cogo\UserDb After you select the database, the Table Name and Column Name fields become active. From the Table Name list, select SampleTable1. This list shows all the tables that exist in the database that you selected.</project>	
10 11 12 13	For example, if you are linking to description data for boreholes, you can name the XDRef "Borehole-Desc1." Click is to select the database. Select SampleUserDB.mdb in the following folder. c:\Land Projects 3\ <project name="">\cogo\UserDb After you select the database, the Table Name and Column Name fields become active. From the Table Name list, select SampleTable1. This list shows all the tables that exist in the database that you selected. From the Column Name list, select Desc1. This list shows all the columns that exist in the table that you selected. The dialog box should appear as shown in the following illustration.</project>	
10 11 12 13	For example, if you are linking to description data for boreholes, you can name the XDRef "Borehole-Desc1." ■ Click to select the database. Select SampleUserDB.mdb in the following folder. c:\Land Projects 3\ <project name="">\cogo\UserDb After you select the database, the Table Name and Column Name fields become active. E From the Table Name list, select SampleTable1. This list shows all the tables that exist in the database that you selected. From the Column Name list, select Desc1. This list shows all the columns that exist in the table that you selected. The dialog box should appear as shown in the following illustration. C Click Column Data Reference</project>	
10 11 12 13	For example, if you are linking to description data for boreholes, you can name the XDRef "Borehole-Desc1." Click to select the database. Select SampleUserDB.mdb in the following folder. c:\Land Projects 3\ <project name="">\cogo\UserDb After you select the database, the Table Name and Column Name fields become active. From the Table Name list, select SampleTable1. This list shows all the tables that exist in the database that you selected. From the Column Name list, select Desc1. This list shows all the columns that exist in the table that you selected. The dialog box should appear as shown in the following illustration. Create External Data Reference Name: Borehole-Desc1 DK</project>	
10 11 12	For example, if you are linking to description data for boreholes, you can name the XDRef "Borehole-Desc1." Click is to select the database. Select SampleUserDB.mdb in the following folder. c:\Land Projects 3\ <project name="">\cogo\UserDb After you select the database, the Table Name and Column Name fields become active. From the Table Name list, select SampleTable1. This list shows all the tables that exist in the database that you selected. From the Column Name list, select Desc1. This list shows all the columns that exist in the table that you selected. The dialog box should appear as shown in the following illustration. Create External Data Reference Name: Database Name: C:\Land Projects 3\new proje is Cancel</project>	
10 11 12 13	For example, if you are linking to description data for boreholes, you can name the XDRef "Borehole-Desc1." Click is to select the database. Select SampleUserDB.mdb in the following folder. c:\Land Projects 3\ <project name="">\cogo\UserDb After you select the database, the Table Name and Column Name fields become active. From the Table Name list, select SampleTable1. This list shows all the tables that exist in the database that you selected. From the Column Name list, select Desc1. This list shows all the columns that exist in the table that you selected. From the Column Name list, select Desc1. This list shows all the columns that exist in the table that you selected. The dialog box should appear as shown in the following illustration. Create External Data Reference Name: Database Name: C:\Land Projects 3\new proje Cancel Table Name: SampleTable1 Help</project>	

14 Click OK to create the external reference.

steps	Use Search to locate
15 From the Labels menu, choose Edit Label Styles.	
16 Click the Point Label Styles tab.	Editing Point Label Styles
17 In the Name box, type a name for the new label style, such as Borehole.	
18 From the XDRef list, select the name of the XDRef that you recently created.	
add any other point data, such as point number, to the label style.	
The upper-left section of the dialog box should appear similar to the following illustration: Name: Borehole Image: Borehole 	
The upper-left section of the dialog box should appear similar to the following illustration:	

21	From the Points menu, choose Point Settings. Click the Insert tab, and verify that the Use Current Point Label Style When Inserting Points check box is selected.	Changing the Point Insertion Settings
22	Click the Create tab and verify that 1 is the Current Number.	Changing the Point Creation Settings
	NOTE For this example, the new points you create in step 25 must be numbered 1, 2, and 3 in order to obtain their description from the XDRef.	

To use XDRefs to label points (continued)

Steps	Use Search to locate
23 From the Labels menu, choose Show Dialog Bar.	Selecting the Current Label Style from the Style Properties Dialog Bar
24 Select the Borehole style as the current point label style.	

25 From the Points menu, choose Create Points ➤ Manual to create three new points in the project.

The points are labeled with the XDRef information.

Performing Geodetic Transformations on Points



Use the Autodesk Land Desktop geodesy commands to relate survey data to mathematical models of the earth.

Changing the Geodetic Zone Transformation Settings

Using the geodesy commands you can

- Calculate the latitude and longitude, State Plane, or UTM coordinates of a point.
- Convert point data that is in another coordinate zone into the current drawing's coordinate zone when you import points.
- Convert point data in a project from one coordinate system to another.

Hundreds of different zones are provided in Autodesk Land Desktop, including UTM projections, and NAD27 and NAD83 State Plane grids. You can also use commands to edit zones and create new zones.

You can use geodetic calculations, related to the current zone, whenever you have any high-order survey calculations to complete, or if you must tie a survey into either state plane coordinates or UTM map projections.

To relate the assumed local northing/easting coordinates of a survey to the selected current zone, you must set the Transformation Settings for the drawing.

Key Concepts

- The State Plane coordinates are expressed as grid northing and grid easting coordinates.
- The assumed coordinates, local northing and local easting coordinates, are equivalent to the COGO point coordinates in the point database.
- The Geodetic Calculator supplies "missing" information related to the current zone. For example, if you know the latitude and longitude of a point, then you can type this information into the calculator to compute the grid northing/easting coordinates. You can then use this information to set the Transformation Settings for the drawing.
- After you set the Transformation Settings for a drawing, you can enter the local northing/easting coordinates into the Geodetic Calculator to compute either the grid coordinates or latitude and longitude of any point.

Calculating State Plane Coordinates from a Known Latitude and Longitude

You can use the Geodetic Calculator to relate local northing and easting coordinates to a State Plane coordinate system by using a known latitude and longitude that you collect using a Global Positioning System (GPS) receiver.

After you calculate the grid coordinates, you can set the transformation settings for the drawing. This lets you calculate the grid coordinates or latitude and longitude of any point in the survey.

In the following task, two separate GPS latitude/ longitude readings are taken on two different points, and the local northing and easting readings of these points are recorded.

To calculate State Plane coordinates from GPS data				
Steps		Use Search to locate		
1	From the Projects menu, choose Drawing Setup to display the Drawing Setup dialog box.			
2	Click the Zone tab and select the current zone for the drawing.	Changing the Current Zone for a Drawing		
3	Click OK to close the Drawing Setup dialog box.			

To calculate State Plane coordinates from GPS data (continued)

Calculator to display the C	Geodetic Calculator dialog bo	x. Calculator
Geodetic Calculator	×	
Point #: Latitude (DMS): Longitude (DMS): Grid Easting: Local Northing: Local Easting: Local Elevation: Scale Factor: Convergence:	0.0000000000 (m) 0.0000000000 (m) 0.0000 (m)	
* Sea level corrections WILL NOT be a * Grid scale factor WILL NOT be applie Select	pplied to Local Coordinates. d to Local Coordinates. Set Point Cancel <u>H</u> elp	

5 Type the latitude and longitude of the first point that you observed with the GPS.

The calculator automatically displays the grid northing and grid easting coordinates for the point that is related to the current zone that you selected in step 2.

Make a note of these coordinates.

6 Type the latitude and longitude of the second point that you collected and make a note of the grid northing and grid easting coordinates.

You can now use these grid northing and easting coordinates to set the transformation settings for the drawing.

7 Click OK to close the Geodetic Calculator dialog box.

To calculate State Plane coordinates from GPS data (continued)

Steps

Use Search to locate

8 From the Projects menu choose Transformation Settings to display the Geodetic Transformation Settings dialog box. Changing the Geodetic Zone Transformation Settings

Transformation Settir	igs	<u><</u>				
Zone Description: WGS 1984, UTM Zone 19 North, Meter						
Apply Transform Settings						
🗖 Apply Sea Level Scale Factor 🛛 🗍 Grid		Grid Scale Factor				
		 Unity 				
Default Elevation	100.0000 (ft)	C User Specified				
Spheroid Radius	6335439.3272 (m)	O Reference Point				
Grid Scale Factor	2.17565517126	C Prismoidal Formula				
	Reference Point	Rotation Point				
Point Number						
Local Northing	0.0000	(ft) (ft)				
Local Easting	0.0000	(ft)				
Grid Northing	0.0000	(m) (m)				
Grid Easting	0.0000	(m) (m)				
Rotation to Grid North	0.000000000	Grid Azimuth				
	OK Cance	el Help				

- 9 Select the Apply Transform Settings check box.
- **10** In the Reference Point section, type the grid northing and grid easting coordinates for the first point that you calculated with the Geodetic Calculator.

Type the local northing and easting coordinates for the same point. Or, if you already placed that point in the drawing, you can click the Reference Point button and select the point from the drawing. You can also type the point number to retrieve the local northing and easting coordinates.

11 Repeat step 10 using the second set of grid northing and easting coordinates, but enter the information in the Rotation Point section.

To calculate State Plane coordinates from GPS data (continued)

Steps	Use Search to locate	
12 Click OK to apply the transformation settings.		
13 From the Points menu choose Point Utilities ➤ Geodetic Calculator.	Using the Geodetic Calculator	
Now you can use the Geodetic Calculator to query the grid northing/easting and latitude/longitude of any point in the survey.		
14 Type the local northing and easting coordinates, and the grid coordinates and latitude/longitude are calculated automatically.		

Working with Drawing and Editing Tools

To increase productivity, take some time to learn the Autodesk Land Desktop drawing and editing tools. You can work in different modes, snap to objects for accuracy, and use grips to modify objects quickly.



In this chapter

- Working in model space and paper space
- Autodesk Land Desktop lines and curves
- Working with basic AutoCAD commands to create objects
- Working with the Symbol Manager
- Working with text
- Digitizing
- Working with editing tools
- Modifying drawing objects
- Attaching external drawings

Introduction

This chapter describes how to use the geometry creation and editing tools in Autodesk Land Desktop. Some topics include:

- Working in paper space and model space.
- Working with layout viewports.
- Using drawing tools to create geometry.
- Capturing data by digitizing paper drawings or raster images.
- Editing objects and correcting mistakes.
- Creating blocks.

Working in Model Space and Paper Space

Search Help for...

Work in Paper Space and Model Space

Overview of Layouts

To enhance productivity, it is recommended that you are familiar with *model space* and *paper space*. In model space, you create drawings and design drawing elements; in paper space, you configure, or lay out, the drawing views on a sheet that represents the final plot.

The Model tab and layout tabs at the bottom of the drawing window control whether the drawing area is in model space or paper space. Each layout tab can display a different paper space drawing environment.

Model / Layout1 / Layout2 /

Click a layout tab to view a layout, and then click the Model tab to return to model space.

Model Space

When you start a drawing, you usually begin in a single, model space viewport where you design and create drawings. As you work in model space, you can switch at any time to paper space where you can set up a drawing sheet for plotting.

You can work in one or multiple viewports in model space. To make it easier to work on more than one portion of a drawing without having to constantly zoom or restore views, you can configure model space to use multiple, tiled viewports. Only one viewport, however, can be active at a time. Click inside a viewport to make it active.

To create tiled viewports

Steps

Use Search to locate

1 From the View menu, choose Viewports ➤ New Viewports *Viewports Dialog Box* to display the Viewports dialog box.

Viewports New Viewports Named Viewports	<u></u>
New name:	Preview
"Active Model Configuration" Single Two: Vertical Two: Horizontal Three: Right Three: Left Three: Above Three: Below Three: Below Three: Vertical Three: Horizontal Four: Equal Four: Equal Four: Left	*Current*
Apply to: Setup: Display 2D	©hange view to: ▼Current*
	OK Cancel <u>H</u> elp

- **2** Select the name of the viewport configuration that you want to use.
- **3** Click OK to return to the drawing.
- **4** With the pointing device, click in a viewport to make it active.

Paper Space and Layout Mode

Search Help for...

Work with Layout Viewports Create Layout Viewports After you complete a drawing in model space, you can arrange drawing views, or layouts, to be printed or plotted. Switch to a layout by clicking a layout tab at the bottom of the drawing screen, or by clicking MODEL on the status bar. In a layout, you can create and arrange *layout viewports* (also known as floating viewports) that contain views of the drawings that you created in model space.

Viewports in paper space are different from tiled viewports. Paper space viewports, or layout viewports, can be moved, resized, and can overlap and be plotted at the same time. This flexibility allows you to better create the final layout for plotting or printing.

When you choose a layout tab for the first time in a drawing session, a single viewport is displayed as a sheet with margins to indicate the paper size of the current, configured plotter and printable area of the paper.

- In paper space, you can place layout viewports anywhere on the drawing sheet. Each new layout, by default, has one layout viewport that fills the entire display, or you can design a layout sheet with multiple viewports.
- When you use paper space to create text and dimensions, you can apply correct scaling relations between drawing objects and text in dimensions.

To create an irregular viewport in paper space				
St	eps	Use Search to locate		
1	To change to a layout, click a layout tab or click MODEL on the status bar.			
2	From the View menu, choose Viewports ➤ Polygonal Viewport.	Create a Nonrectangular Viewport		
3	Draw the viewport shape on the layout. You can use straight line segments or curves to draw the			
	viewport.			
4	Type Close to join the last segment of the viewport boundary with the viewport start point.			
5	Model space is regenerated and the drawing objects become visible in the layout viewport.			



Create Layouts Control Visibility in Layout Viewports

Controlling the Display in Layout Viewports

After you create layout viewports in the paper space layout, you can control the visibility of objects in the viewports in several ways. For example, you can freeze and thaw layers, hide lines, and use different views of the drawing, such as different magnification, orientations, or viewpoints.

After you create a layout viewport on a drawing sheet, you can move it, resize it, and overlap it with other viewports. You can use a view of tiled viewports within one floating viewport, and then arrange it with other viewports on the layout page.

Key Concepts

- You can edit the contents of the layout viewport by returning to model space. To do this, click PAPER on the status bar.
- Objects that are created in paper space, such as a border, are visible only in paper space and cannot be edited in model space.
- To plot viewports with different scales, it is recommended that you add dimensions in paper space.
- You can put dimensions and annotations on another layer, and you can make that layer visible or invisible.
- You can turn off viewports that you do not want to plot. You can also turn off a viewport when you move or resize it to avoid regenerating the drawing.

Autodesk Land Desktop Lines and Curves



Drawing Lines, Curves, and Spirals You can use several methods to draw lines and curves in a drawing. For example, you can use

■ Autodesk Land Desktop commands, such as Line, Curve, and Spiral, from the Lines/Curves menu.

When you use these commands, you can reference points in the COGO point database.

■ AutoCAD commands, such as LINE, ARC, and POLYLINE, to draw simple objects.

For more information, see "Working with Basic AutoCAD Commands to Create Objects" on page 136.

- Autodesk Survey Command Line commands (if installed).
- Special Lines commands to create lines with symbols, such as tree lines and fence lines.

When you use the Autodesk Land Desktop commands, such as Line and Curve, you can draw lines and arcs by referencing COGO points in the project point database. You can then use point filters to select points by number or from the drawing area.

Line and Curve commands can be simple or complex. For example, you can draw a line by selecting two points, or you can draw a more complex line by drawing a best fitting line between points using the least squares adjustment method.

Key Concepts

- Usually it does not matter how you draw objects. You can use the commands that work best for you. An exception is when you draw vertical curves or spirals as you design a roadway. To draw spirals, use Autodesk Land Desktop spiral commands; to draw vertical curves, use the Autodesk Civil Design vertical curves commands.
- After you draw the basic geometry of lines and curves, you can use the Autodesk Land Desktop database definition commands to define the geometry to databases. For example, you can use the objects to define parcels or roadway alignments.

Drawing Spiral Curves

Spiral curves are frequently used in roadway design to achieve gradual transitions. Instead of having the constant curvature of an arc, a spiral curvature is adjusted for gradual curvature at the beginning and then increased curvature to the SC (spiral-to-curve) intersection.



Autodesk Land Desktop supports four types of spirals: clothoid, quadratic, cosinusoidal, and sinusoidal. Each spiral type has a different rate of curvature, as shown in the following illustration.



For most purposes, you can use the clothoid spiral. However, when you design for extremely high-speed travel, such as for the rail systems of Europe and Japan, use spirals with quadratic, cosinusoidal, or sinusoidal curvature functions.

- It is recommended that you create spiral curves by using the spiral commands, rather than by using ARC or POLYLINE.
- You can create spiral curves using speed tables. Superelevation information, or the *E value*, is associated with spirals created from speed tables. You can use this superelevation data in Autodesk Civil Design when designing superelevated roads.

Special Lines

To help you distinguish features on a terrain, such as fence and tree lines, Autodesk Land Desktop has a Special Lines command that draws lines or curves using symbol linetypes. The following illustration shows a tree line, which is a line with a series of curves.



Special lines include styles for a shore line, various fences, walls, and railroad tracks. You can also add annotation or symbols to special lines.

Working with Basic AutoCAD Commands to Create Objects

You use basic AutoCAD drawing tools to create lines, polylines, curved objects, hatched areas, and text.

Key Concepts

- Most drawing tools generally display prompts to specify a start point and then an endpoint. You can specify these points with the pointing device or by entering coordinates on the command line.
- As you use drawing tools, it is important to pay attention to the prompts on the command line. Many drawing commands contain additional options.
- You can use basic objects as reference. For example, polylines can define boundaries, and construction lines can define limits.

Lines



Draw Lines Draw Polylines Use Orthogonal Locking The line is the most basic and functional drawing object. You can draw a line as a single segment or as a series of segments. To start a new line segment at the endpoint of the last line drawn, enter the LINE command again and press ENTER.
Line segments can also contain arcs. You can draw multiple parallel lines and freehand sketch lines. You can draw lines in a variety of styles by using different linetypes and colors. Each line segment is a single object. You can also draw a series of line segments as a single object, known as a *polyline*. For more information, see "Polylines" on page 137.

Key Concepts

- Draw a line segment by specifying a start point and an endpoint. A line can be one segment or be composed of a series of connected line segments. You can close line segments by joining the start point of the first line segment with the endpoint of the last segment.
- To draw lines with accuracy, enter coordinates on the command line.
- Specify settings such as object snaps or grid snaps to ensure precision. Use orthogonal locking, or the Ortho mode, which restricts the cursor to the horizontal and vertical axis, and assists in constructing 90-degree corners.
- To end the LINE command, you can press ENTER or ESC at any time. If you press ENTER twice, the LINE command is interrupted, and you can start a new line.

Polylines



Draw Polylines Modify or Join Polylines Polylines are a series of line segments connected at *vertices*, or intersections, as shown in the following illustration.



The segments in a polyline are not separate objects; therefore, a polyline is created as a single object. Unlike standard line segments, polyline segments can be straight or curved, thin or wide, or tapered. When you edit a polyline, you change all its line segments at once instead of one at a time. After you select the polyline's start point, you are prompted to select the following polyline options:

Specify next point or [Arc/Halfwidth/Length/Undo/Width]:

Key Concepts

- To create a curved segment in a polyline, select the Arc option and then use the pointing device to specify the arc endpoints. To return to drawing straight line segments, type L (Line) on the command line.
- To change the width of a polyline segment, select the Width option and specify a width greater than 0. You can also taper the width within each polyline segment by selecting the Halfwidth option. Specify a width at both the start point and the endpoint of the segment.

NOTE To draw a solid wide line, make sure that the Apply solid fill option on the Display tab of the Options dialog box is selected, or type **fill** at the command line and select ON.

- Specify the start point and endpoint of the polyline segments with the pointing device or by entering coordinates. To close a polyline (the start point of the first line segment joins with the endpoint of the last segment) use the Close option.
- You can also create a polyline from the boundaries of overlapping objects or from an object that was drawn using lines and arcs by using the Boundary command.
- To modify a polyline, choose Polyline from the Modify menu, or type **pedit** on the command line to display options for editing polylines.

Curved Objects

You can use various methods to create curved objects, such as circles, arcs, ellipses, and donuts.

Key Concepts

- Create a circle by specifying a center point, radius or diameter, or tangent points. You can choose a method to create circles according to how you want to control the sequence of point selection.
- There are several ways to create an arc, but one of the points that you specify is either the center point or the start point.
- To draw an ellipse, you can specify center points or endpoints. The size of the ellipse is determined by its major (long) axis and its minor (short) axis. After you create the ellipse, you can move the cursor along one or both axes to adjust its size.



Search Help for...

- You can draw an elliptical arc by specifying endpoints and axis distance as if you were drawing a full ellipse. A start angle and an end angle that you specify define the arc's start point and endpoint.
- To create either filled rings or solid-filled circles, you can create donuts, which are closed polylines that have widths. Create a donut by specifying the inside and outside diameter and the center.

Curved Lines

To draw irregularly shaped curves, you can draw a *spline*. A spline is a smooth curve passing though or near a given set of points in a drawing.

You can create a spline by specifying points. You can close the spline so that the start and endpoints are coincident and tangent.

Т	To draw a curved line			
Steps		Use Search to locate		
1	From the Draw menu, choose Spline. You are prompted to select a polyline object or specify a point.	Draw Splines		
2	Specify points along a path where you want to create the curved line.			
3	Press ENTER, and you are prompted for the start tangent and end tangent. These points determine how the spline is displayed.			
4	Return the cursor to the start point of the spline to locate the start tangent point, and then do the same for the end tangent point.	Modify Splines		

You may have to experiment with the placement of the start and end tangent points. After you draw a spline curve, you can edit it with grips.

Hatch Patterns



In a complex drawing, you can use hatch patterns to distinguish different components or areas in the drawing.

Overview of Hatch Patterns and Solid Fills

Create Unbounded Hatches

- You can choose from a variety of predefined hatch patterns, or you can define your own.
- You can define an area to be hatched either by specifying a point inside a boundary, or by selecting an object to be hatched, if it is a closed object.
- To create complex boundaries for hatching, create a closed polyline or region, or any closed object. You can use advanced hatching options to detect any areas (islands) inside the boundary and control whether they are hatched.
- When you edit the hatch boundary, the hatch object adjusts to fit.
- To control where hatch patterns display in a drawing, place them on their own layers.

To hatch an area	
Steps	Use Search to locate
1 From the Draw menu, choose Hatch to dis Boundary Hatch dialog box.	splay the Boundary Hatch Dialog Box
🗱 Boundary Hatch	<u>? ×</u>
Quick Advanced	
Type: Predefined	Pick Points
Pattern: ANSI31	E Select Objects
Swatch:	Eemove Islands
Custom paţtern:	
Angle: 0d0'0''	
<u>S</u> cale: 1	Inherit Properties
Relative to paper space	_
Spaging: 1	Double
ISO pen width:	Composition
Previe <u>w</u> OK	Cancel <u>H</u> elp

To hatch an area (continued)

Steps

Use Search to locate

2 In the Boundary Hatch dialog box, click the pattern that is Use Predefined Hatch displayed in the Swatch box.

Patterns

The Hatch Pattern Palette dialog box is displayed.

I	Hatch Pattern	Palette			? ×
A	INSI ISO	Other Predefine	ed Custom		1
	ANSI31	ANSI32	ANSI33	ANSI34	
	ANSI35	ANSI36	ANSI37	ANSI38	
		OK	Cance	el <u>F</u>	<u>l</u> elp

- 3 Select a pattern, and then click OK to return to the Boundary Hatch dialog box.
- 4 To hatch an enclosed area, click Pick Points. To hatch objects, click Select Objects.
- 5 Specify a point inside a closed boundary, or select an object.
- 6 In the Boundary Hatch dialog box, click OK.

Working with the Symbol Manager

Symbols are an important element in the preliminary design phase, in site drawings, and in completed as-built road plans. As a working tool, symbols, such as fire hydrants and benchmarks, can be placed in a site plan to produce the finished drawing. You can access over 700 symbols through the Symbol Manager and insert them into a drawings

- Symbol palettes and symbol blocks based on APWA (American Public Works Association) symbol standards have been added to Autodesk Land Desktop.
- Symbols are organized into three levels in the Symbol Manager: sets, categories, and palettes.
- Before you add symbols to a drawing, you can preview them in the Symbol Manager.
- You can add symbols and create new symbol sets. You can create new symbols by editing existing symbols or by creating your own symbols.

	To access symbols in the Symbol Manager			
Steps		Use Search to locate		
1	From the Utilities menu, choose Symbol Manager.	Symbol Management		
2	In the Symbol Manager, locate a symbol to insert by selecting a Symbol Set, Category, and Palette.	Using the Symbol Category and Palette Dialog Box		
3	Select the symbol either graphically or from the list.			
4	Click OK to insert the symbol into the drawing.			

Working with Text



Overview of Text Styles Work with Text Styles An important part of drawing documentation is the text information, such as dimensions, specifications, labels, titles, and other annotation, that you can add. When you create single line or multiline text, the current text style is used. Each text style has associated fonts, heights, and any special effects, such as inserting text upside down or backwards.

To use different text styles, such as leroy, you must load them into the drawing by using the Text options in Drawing Setup, shown in the following illustration.

🔣 Drawing Setup 🔀				
Load/Save Settings Units Load Text Styles from a St Path: c:\Program Files\Land D Style Set Name: fraction.stp leroy.stp milli.stp milli.stp meroy.stp point.stp	Scale Zone Orientation yle Set ■ esktop 3\Data\setup\ Styles In This Set: ↓ 40 ↓ 100 ↓ 120 ↓ 120 ↓ 175 ↓ 200 ↓ 240 ↓ 200	Text Style Border		
Load				
	ОК	Cancel <u>H</u> elp		

To select the current text style, use the Text Style dialog box, which you can access by selecting Text Style from the Format menu. As you select different

styles and settings, you can view a sample of the text in the Preview section of the dialog box.

🎇 Text Style		<u>? ×</u>
Style Name	• <u>N</u> ew <u>R</u> ename.	Delete Cancel
Font <u>F</u> ont Name: R ^A simplex.shx <u>Use Big Font</u>	Font Style:	Height: 3.000
Effects Upside down Backwards Vertical	Width Factor: 1.000 Oblique Angle: 0d0'0''	Preview ABBCCD ABBCCD <u>Preview</u>

After you have selected a text style, create text in the drawing by selecting either the Single Line Text or Multiline Text command from the Draw ➤ Text menu.

- You can adjust the text height and width (compressed or expanded). You can also specify display effects, such as upside down, backwards, or vertical, for the text.
- Some text styles, such as Standard, are *zero-height* styles, which means they do not have a predefined text height. For these styles, specify a text height in the Height box.
- The text can be rotated at an angle to align with angled lines in the drawing.
- You can adjust the slant of the text by specifying the oblique settings for the text. For example, you can place text on a line drawn at a 30-degree angle by entering **30** for the oblique value of the text.
- To insert short, simple text entries, use single-line text (TEXT command).
- For longer text entries, use a multiline text (MTEXT) command. You are then prompted to define a rectangular area to indicate the text's position in the drawing. To enter the text, and to customize how the text is

displayed, use the Multiline Text Editor dialog box, shown in the following illustration.

Multiline Text Editor	<u>? ×</u>
Character Properties Line Spacing Find/Replace	ОК
A Simplex 3 • B I U • B ByLayer • Symbol •	Cancel
	ImportTe <u>x</u> t
	Help
Modify character properties. Ln 1 Col 1 AutoCAPS	

Working with Curved Text

A curved text object is called *CText* (or AEC Curvetext). You can create, edit, or move curved text on any curve or circle object in a drawing.

- Select the CText grip and rotate the label around the curve. CText always remains legible. The text is flipped automatically, as necessary, so that you can read it in plan view.
- To explode the CText to individual text objects, use EXPLODE.
- If you change the position of the curve or circle on which you have placed the text, the text adjusts its position accordingly.

Т	To create text on a curve				
St	eps	Use Search to locate			
1	From the Utilities menu, choose Curve Text ➤ Draw Curve Text, or type ctext at the command line.	Drawing Text on a Curve			
2	Select the curve or circle object that you want to label.				
3	Press ENTER to display the Curve Text Editor dialog box.				
4	In the Text Above box, type the text you want placed above the curve.				
5	In the Text Below box, type the text you want placed below the curve.				
6	Select a text style. If you select a zero-height style, then also specify a text height.				

Т	To create text on a curve (continued)		
St	eps	Use Search to locate	
7	Specify an offset. The offset value is a factor that is multiplied by the text height to produce an offset distance.		
8	Click OK to draw the text on the curve.		
9	Change the position of the label using grips, if necessary. If you change the position of the curve that you have placed the text on, the text adjusts its position accordingly.	Grip Editing Label Text	

Attaching Notes to Objects

You can attach text or an external reference document to any AutoCAD object in a drawing by using Notes.

- You can add detailed information to a selected AutoCAD object by selecting the Text Notes tab in the Notes dialog box.
- You can attach an external file (document, spreadsheet, image, or photo) to any AutoCAD object by selecting the Reference Documents tab in the Notes dialog box.

Т	To attach text to an object			
St	eps	Use Search to locate		
1	From the Utilities menu, choose Notes.	Attaching Text to an Object		
2	Select the object in the drawing to which you want to attach a note.			
3	Press ENTER to display the Notes dialog box.			
4	Under Text Notes, type the text you want to attach to the object.			
5	Click OK to attach the text to the selected object in the drawing.			
6	To view notes for an object, choose Notes from the Utilities menu, and then select the object.			

Adding Leaders to a Drawing

Lines that connect annotation with objects in a drawing are called *leaders*. You can insert leaders that have text or symbols attached to them. There are two methods for adding leaders to a drawing. You can define the attributes of a leader with the annotation settings and then insert the leader in a drawing, or you can insert a predefined leader.

- You can define attributes of a leader by changing the Leader Settings.
- You can use a leader with predefined styles.
- You can insert a leader with text, describing the properties of an object.

Т	To insert a leader that you define				
St	eps	Use Search to locate			
1	From the Utilities menu, choose Leaders > Leader Settings to make changes to the default leader attributes.	Changing the Leader Settings			
2	From the Utilities menu, choose Leaders \succ Text Leader, and then select the type of leader you want to insert.	Inserting a Leader with Text			
3	Specify a start point and endpoint for the leader.				
4	Do one of the following:				
	 If you are inserting a text leader, enter the text that you want to be displayed at the end of the leader. If you are inserting a symbol leader, enter any symbol attributes that you want to be displayed in the leader symbol. 				

To insert a predefined leader			
Steps		Use Search to locate	
1	From the Utilities menu, choose Leaders ➤ Predefined Leaders to display the Leaders dialog box.	Inserting Leaders with Variable Pointers	
2	Select the leader that you want to insert and click OK.		
3	Depending on the leader that you select to insert, specify the leader attributes.		

Digitizing

You can *digitize* paper documents or raster images, such as bitmap files. Digitizing is synonymous with *vectorizing*, which is the process of creating AutoCAD vectors by tracing paper documents or raster lines.

Vector objects are produced when you draw objects in Autodesk Land Desktop. For example, when you draw a line by using the LINE command, it is a vector object. Vector objects are described by a set of mathematical equations, whereas raster data is made up of pixels. Raster data is produced when you scan a paper drawing or photograph with a document scanner. Autodesk Land Desktop cannot recognize raster lines and arcs as separate objects.

For example, if you have a raster image of contour lines, then you can insert the image into the drawing (at world coordinates and correct scale) and then use the Digitize Contours command from the Terrain > Contour Utilities menu to trace the raster image on screen. If you have a paper contour map, then you can use a tablet and a table pointer, or puck, to trace the contours, creating polylines on screen that you can later turn into contour objects that you can use when building an existing ground surface.



Digitizing Methods

You can choose from the following digitizing methods and procedures.

- You can digitize by using polylines, lines, and arcs.
- To digitize contours, you can use the Digitize Contours command, which draws straight line segments only. You can assign an elevation to the contour as you digitize it, and you can make this elevation relative to other contours you draw.
- You can specify to use a tablet to digitize when you set up Autodesk Land Desktop.





Digitizing Contours Digitizing Tablets ■ Use the advanced digitizing tools in Autodesk CAD Overlay[®] to digitize raster images and create contour objects. For more information about CAD Overlay, contact your authorized Autodesk dealer.

Key Concepts

- You can rubber-sheet vectors by using the Map > Tools > Rubber Sheet command if their source (raster image or paper drawing) is distorted. For example, you can match points on the new vectors you created to control points in a drawing. You can also match points on an image frame (a vector object) to points in the drawing. For more information, see "Rubber Sheeting Two Maps" in the online Help.
- When you convert raster objects to vector objects, the drawing can be easily modified. Vector objects can also reduce a project's total file size.

Working with Editing Tools



To edit objects in the drawing, you can choose from the following two options:

- Select the editing command first, and then select the objects that you want to edit.
- Select the objects first and then select the editing command (noun-verb selection method).

Whether you choose the editing command first or later, you must distinguish objects that you want to edit from others by creating a *selection set*. A selection set contains one or more objects that a command can act upon at the same time.

- You can group objects in a selection set according to properties such as color, linetype, lineweight, or layer.
- You can apply more than one editing command to the same selection set.
- You can name and save a selection set of objects, known as a *group*.
- When you select one member of a group, all members are selected.
- To use the noun-verb selection method to select objects and then select the editing command, the PICKFIRST variable must be set to 1.

Creating a Selection Set with Filters

When you use the Build Selection Set command, you can create a selection set by setting up object property filters to specify the objects in a drawing you want to include in the selection set. Objects in the current drawing that do not satisfy the filter criteria are not part of the selection set.

- You can specify the object properties that you want to include in the filter by name.
- You can select objects in the current drawing with the object properties that you want to include in the filter.

Т	To filter objects by specifying properties		
St	eps	Use Search to locate	
1	From the Utilities menu, choose Build Selection Set to display the Build Selection Set dialog box.	Filtering Objects by Selection	
2	Under Names in Drawing, click the button that corresponds to the property type that you want to include in the filter.		
3	Select the property that you want to include in the selection set.		
4	Click OK.		
5	Click Build Selection to add all the objects in the current drawing that meet the filter criteria to the selection set.		
6	Click Apply to accept the current selection set.		

Editing with Grips

The standard way to select objects in the drawing is to use *grips*. Grips are small boxes, or "handles," displayed at various points on a selected object that you can use to edit the object. Each Autodesk Land Desktop object contains grips that you can use to stretch, copy, move, rotate, and change the height of an object.

NOTE To make sure that grips display, choose Options from the Tools menu, and then click the Selection tab. Under Grips, select Enable Grips. To help you distinguish between unselected and selected grips, specify different colors for Unselected grips and Selected grips.

The following illustration shows the grip points on objects and text.



To edit with grips		
Steps		Use Search to locate
1	To display grips, press ESC twice to clear any commands.	Use Grips to Edit Objects
2	Click the object that you want to edit, and then click a specific grip.	
3	Right-click and choose an editing command from the grip editing shortcut menu.	Use Grip Modes
	NOTE Some commands prompt you to enter further options on the command line.	
4	After you finish editing, press ESC twice.	



Correct Mistakes Remove Objects Correcting Mistakes

You can correct errors in several ways. Most editing commands require that you select drawing objects either before or after the editing process. However, the Undo, Redo, and Oops commands rely only on previous actions that you have taken. The following table describes the most frequently used methods of correcting mistakes.

Frequent	Frequently used editing commands			
Command	Access	Description		
undo	Edit ➤ Undo, or type u on the command line.	Reverses the most recent action in the current drawing session. You can move back through as many actions as you want by entering a number on the command line. However, a more accurate way is to step back incrementally by entering 1 at the prompt.		
redo	Edit ➤ Redo, or type redo on the command line.	Reverses the UNDO command to reverse the most recent undo action.		
erase	Modify ➤ Erase, or type erase on the command line.	Removes selected objects from the drawing. Use any method to specify the objects to be erased.		
oops	Type oops on the command line.	Restores objects that were removed by Erase.		

Modifying Drawing Objects

Search Help for...

Change Existing Objects

You can easily revise drawings in Autodesk Land Desktop. You can use either the commands from the Modify menu, or you can use several editing commands in combination with grips. Select a specific grip, and then right-click to display the grip editing shortcut menu. By using the shortcut menu, you can move, mirror, rotate, scale, and stretch objects. The following sections describe the most common commands used to modify objects.



Copy Objects

Copy, Offset, or Mirror Objects

Make Multiple Copies with Grips

Create an Array of Objects



Move Objects Align Objects Use Precision Tools

Copying Objects

You can copy objects to any location in the drawing independent of, or in relation to, the original object. To copy one or more objects, select one or more objects or a block, and then specify a start point (base point) and an endpoint (point of displacement).

Key Concepts

- You can copy selected objects multiple times in succession by typing m (Multiple) on the command line.
- To mirror an object, create a mirror line by specifying two points. The new object is placed along the line in a mirror image of the original object. You can either keep or delete the original object.
- You can offset a copy of an object a specified distance from the original object. You can offset objects such as lines, arcs, circles, 2D polylines, ellipses, and so on. The offset object has the same linetype, color, and layer properties as the original object.
- You can create an array of identical objects (multiple copies of an original) in a rectangular or circular (polar) arrangement. For a rectangular array, you can specify the number of rows and columns.
- In a polar array, you place objects around the circumference of a circle or arc. You specify the center of the circle, the number of identical objects that you want in the array, and the angle, or rotation, of each object from the center.

Moving Objects

To move an object, select the object and specify a start point (base point) and an endpoint (point of displacement).

- The MOVE command is similar to the basic COPY command, but it does not leave the original object in place.
- You can use various methods, such as snaps, coordinate values, and object snaps, to move objects with precision in a drawing.
- You can move objects without changing their size or orientation.
- You can rotate objects using the ROTATE command after you specify a start point (base point around which the object rotates), and a relative or absolute rotation angle. You can use the pointing device to position the object, or you can enter an exact angle value at the command line.

Resizing Objects

Search Help for...

Resize or Reshape Objects Use Grip Modes

Trim or Extend Objects

You can change the size of objects by using commands from the Modify menu that stretch, scale, extend, lengthen, and trim objects.

Key Concepts

- To stretch an object, choose Stretch from the Modify menu, select the object with a crossing selection, and then specify a base point and a point of displacement. To stretch an object with accuracy, use the Stretch grip mode in combination with object snaps or grid snaps, or enter relative coordinate values. For more information about using the crossing selection method, search Help for "Move Objects."
- You can use various methods to scale objects with the same scale factor in the *X* and *Y* directions. You can enter a scale factor, or you can scale in relation to an existing object. When you use an object as a reference, you can either enter a scale factor or you can select two points to drag the object to the scale you want and then click to select it.
- If you want an object to end precisely at an implied boundary (construction line) or another object, you can extend the object.
- You can cut an object so that it does not overlap another object by trimming it to the first object. To define the edge at which you want to trim the object, select a line, polyline, arc, circle, or other object.
- You can alter the length of objects in various ways, such as specifying the distance to lengthen in units or as a percentage, entering the total length of the object, or dragging the object's endpoint.

Inserting Breaks in Objects

Search Help for...

Create Breaks

You can erase a specified portion of objects, such as lines, circles, arcs, polylines, ellipses, splines, and construction lines. After selecting BREAK, you can choose one of two ways to break an object.

- Use the pointing device to select the object at the first break point, and then select the second break point.
- Select the whole object, enter **f** to select the first point, and then select the second point.

In arcs and circles, the BREAK command always removes the specified part in a counterclockwise direction.

Using the Utilities Edit Commands



Using the Utilities Editing Commands

Edit Submenu (Utilities)

You can use the Utilities Edit commands to change blocks, text, and object properties. You can also perform a quick scale of an object or a layer, as well as erase all objects on a layer.

- You can make blocks and text smaller or larger in the drawing.
- You can change *Z* coordinates of selected objects to a specified value.

Т	To rescale blocks and text		
Steps		Use Search to locate	
1	From the Utilities menu, choose Edit ➤ Rescale Blocks/ Text.	Rescaling Blocks and Text	
2	Type the scale factor or reference that you want the block or text to display, and then press ENTER.		
3	Type the rotation angle and press ENTER.		
4	Select the objects that you want to rescale.		

To set the Z coordinate of an object to a new elevation		
Steps Use Search to local		
1	From the Utilities menu, choose Edit \succ Flatten Z Values.	Setting the Z Coordinate of an Object to Zero
2	Select the objects whose Z values you want to adjust.	
3	Type a new elevation for the objects.	

Creating Blocks

A *block* is a group of objects that you can define as one object, or block definition. For example, you could use individual objects, such as lines and curves, to draw a symbol. You can then define those objects as a block, which can be reused from drawing to drawing. If, at some point, you must modify the individual objects within the block, then you can explode the block.

Key Concepts

- Use BLOCK to define blocks to exist in the current drawing only. Use WBLOCK to define blocks as *.dwg* files that are independent of the current drawing.
- You can create a library of blocks in which each block is a frequently used combination of objects.
- You can create custom blocks and save them as external files to use as symbols.
- If you change the original block definition, then all references to the block definition are updated automatically. However, if you import a block definition from another file and that file is not attached as an external reference (xref), any changes you make to the block definition are not updated in the current file.
- After you insert a block, you can scale, rotate, or explode it. When you explode a block, it is broken down into its component objects. You can then modify the objects or redefine the block.

You can use AutoCAD block creation and definition tools as shown in the following tasks.

To create a block definition

Steps

Use Search to locate

1 From the Draw menu, choose Block ➤ Make to display the Overview of Blocks Block Definition dialog box.

Block Definition	<u>? ×</u>
N <u>a</u> me:	•
Base point	Objects
Pic <u>k</u> point	Select objects
<u>×</u> : 0	C <u>R</u> etain
Y: 0	<u>C</u> onvert to block
- , 	
<u> </u>	No objects selected
Preview icon	
C Do not include an i	con
Create icon from block geometry	
Insert <u>u</u> nits: Unitles	is 💌
D <u>e</u> scription:	×
	<u></u>
Hyperlink	
	OK Cancel <u>H</u> elp

- 2 In the Name box, type a name for the block.
- 3 Click Select Objects. Use any object selection method to select the objects that you want to include in the block definition, and then press ENTER to return to the Block Definition dialog box.
 4 Select Convert to Block to convert the original objects to a block definition. You can also select Retain to keep the original objects in the drawing, or select Delete to remove the objects from the drawing.
 5 Click Pick Point to define an insertion base point. Insert Blocks
- 6 Click OK. The block is defined as an internal block, and exists in the current drawing only.

To insert a block		
eps	Use Search to locate	
From the Insert menu, choose Block.	Insert Blocks	
In the Insert dialog box, select a block or a drawing file to insert as a block.		
Specify the insertion point, scale, and rotation, and then press ENTER to insert the block.	Use Precision Tools (Reference tab)	
TIP To view the insertion point for the block, type blipmode at the command line.		
	o insert a block reps From the Insert menu, choose Block. In the Insert dialog box, select a block or a drawing file to insert as a block. Specify the insertion point, scale, and rotation, and then press ENTER to insert the block. TIP To view the insertion point for the block, type blipmode at the command line.	

Attaching External Drawings

You can link another drawing to the current drawing by using the external reference (xref) option. If you insert a drawing as a block, the block definition is stored in the current drawing, but it is not updated if the original drawing changes. However, if you attach a drawing as an external reference, then the current drawing is updated if the original changes.

- You can either attach or overlay an xref drawing.
- During a drawing session, you can keep the current drawing updated while changes are being made to an attached xref drawing by periodically reloading the xref.
- You can completely remove, or detach, an xref drawing from the current drawing.
- To save memory and increase speed, you can unload an xref drawing that you are not using. The pointer to the xref drawing remains and you can reload it when you need it.
- You can make an xref drawing a permanent part of the current drawing by binding it. Binding converts an xref to a block that is no longer updated when the original drawing changes.

To attach an xref drawing

Steps

Use Search to locate

- 1 From the Insert menu, choose External Reference to display the Select Reference File dialog box.
- Attach External References
- **2** Select the drawing file, and then click Open to display the External Reference dialog box.

External Reference		<u>?×</u>
Name: lesson-14		🔽 Retain <u>P</u> ath
Path: C:\Land Projects 3\	Tutorial1\Dwg\lesson-14.dwg	
Reference Type		
Attachment	C <u>O</u> verlay	
- Insertion point	n – Scale	- Botation
Specify On-screen	Specify On-screen	Specify On-screen
⊠: 0.00	≚ 1.00	Angle: 0d0'0''
¥: 0.00	¥: 1.00	
7. 0.00	7. 1.00	
≝·]0.00		
	OK	Cancel <u>H</u> elp

- **3** Select Attachment and specify the external reference parameters, and verify that under Insertion point, the Specify On-screen check box is selected.
- Click OK to select the insertion point in the drawing.
 NOTE If you do not use all the xref drawing in the current drawing, then type xclip (clipping boundary) to remove a portion of an xref drawing from the display.

Working with Surfaces

You can use points, DEM files (digital elevation models), contours, breaklines, and boundaries to generate a model of the earth's surface. From this model, you can create contours and sections, and by comparing two surfaces, you can calculate volumes.



In this chapter

- Working with the Terrain Model Explorer
- Creating surface data
- Building surfaces
- Editing surfaces
- Working with surface output and visualization tools

Introduction



Creating Surface Models Building a Surface Adding TIN Lines to a Surface After you have entered data into a project, you can create a surface model from that data. A *surface model* is a three-dimensional geometric representation of the surface of an area of land. Surface models in Autodesk Land Desktop are made up of triangles, which are created when Autodesk Land Desktop connects the points that make up the surface data.

The triangles form a *triangulated irregular network* (TIN) surface. A *TIN line* is one of the lines that makes up the surface triangulation, as shown in the following illustration.



To create TIN lines, Autodesk Land Desktop connects the surface points that are closest together. These TIN lines interpolate surface elevations, filling in the gaps where no survey data or contour data is known, to create an approximation of the surface.

Using Point, DEM, Contour, Breakline, and Boundary Data in Surfaces



Creating Breakline Data to Use in Surface Generation

Using DEM Files as Surface Data Random point data, points taken at a variety of elevations and coordinates as opposed to interpolated contour data, often makes the best surface data. To use points for a surface, you can select point groups, select COGO points from the drawing, or import point files. You can create point groups from the points in the COGO point database. Point files can be ASCII text files or Microsoft[®]Access database files. If you have blocks or lines at elevations in a drawing, then their coordinates can also be selected as point data to use in surfaces.

In addition to points, you can also build surfaces from DEM files (Digital Elevation Models), contour, breakline, and boundary data. You can have the contours treated as individual points where the contour vertices are used as surface points, or you can have the contours treated as breaklines that prevent triangulation lines from crossing the contours. Surface TIN lines typically do not cross contour lines.

To build a surface accurately, you must provide more information than points and contours. For example, to prevent surface triangulation across features such as roads or streams, you can define *breaklines*. Breaklines are constraint lines used by the model that represent abrupt changes in the surface. TIN lines can be drawn to and from breakline vertices, but they do not cross the breakline.

By including boundaries in the surface definition, you can control how the surface extends to its outer limits, and you can hide internal areas to prevent triangulation from occurring.

Surface Accuracy

When you gather data for the surface model, you must be thorough so that you create an accurate model.

At the beginning of a project, you can make a quick surface model by digitizing a contour map of the existing site, or by using a DEM file. If the project is more advanced, and you already have survey data, then you can use the point data from that survey to create a more accurate surface model.

If you do not have enough surface data, then the surface elevations may not be interpolated correctly. By being thorough, you can ensure that the surface output—such as contours, volumes, watershed models, profiles, and cross sections—is as accurate as possible.



Editing Surfaces Contour Data and Surface Triangulations

Working with the Terrain Model Explorer



Using the Terrain Model Explorer Creating Surface Models Managing Surfaces The Terrain Model Explorer consolidates all the surface creation and management features in one place. You can use the Terrain Model Explorer to create, open, build, and view surfaces.

The left pane of the Terrain Model Explorer contains a Terrain and a Volume folder. To create a new surface, right-click the Terrain folder and choose Create New Surface from the shortcut menu. After you create a surface, a surface folder with icon is created below the Terrain folder. Click the surface icon to display the surface data icons. You can access commands by right-clicking the icons to display a shortcut menu.

# Terrain Model Explorer 📃 🗌	×
Manager Help	
Terrain Contour Information Total # contour points: Total # contour points: Point Files Elevation Range: DEM Files Mathematical actions Breaklines Add Contour Data Breaklines Remove All Contour Data Volume Volume	

Use the shortcut menus to add the surface data to the surface folder, and then build the surface.

The Volume folder in the left pane of the Terrain Model Explorer contains information about grid and composite volume surfaces that are created from the volume calculations commands on the Terrain menu. Use the Terrain Model Explorer to view properties about the volume surfaces, as well as open, close, and view volume surfaces.

You can keep the Terrain Model Explorer open while you use other commands. Use the buttons in the upper-right corner of the dialog box to minimize, maximize, and close the Terrain Model Explorer.

Creating Surface Data



Creating Surface Data and Adding It to the Surface Folders Before you can build a surface, you must create surface data in the Terrain Model Explorer by using the shortcut menu commands, such as Add Point Group.

⊑ Terrain	Name
⊞£A)FG ⊟£Al Surface1	
E 😵 TIN Data	
Point Groups Point Files	Add Point Group
DEM Files	
- 🖉 Breaklines	
Edit History	
Watershed	

When you add the surface data into the Terrain Model Explorer, you are determining the objects to include in the surface. These objects can be point groups, point files, points, DEM files, breaklines, contours, and boundaries.

Key Concepts

- When you import a point file into the Terrain Model Explorer, the point data is not added to the point database. The data is used exclusively for building the surface.
- To add contour data to a surface, you must have contour objects or polylines in the drawing.
- To add breaklines, you must use the commands on the Breaklines shortcut menu in the Terrain Model Explorer.

Creating Breaklines to Use in Surface Generation

Breaklines are constraint lines that represent abrupt changes in a surface, such as retaining walls, stream banks, and curb; or breaklines represent objects with known elevations, such as contours. You can use breaklines to prevent surface triangulation across these objects.

Breaklines prevent TIN lines from crossing the breakline. This is essential if the breakline represents a constant elevation, and you do not want elevations to be interpolated across such a breakline. The breakline also forces retriangulation of the surface based on the breakline vertices.



Creating Breakline Data to Use in Surface Generation The following illustration shows how a surface triangulates before and after breaklines are created. When you define breaklines, you can control triangulation with regard to abrupt changes in the terrain.



You can define three types of breaklines.

- Proximity breaklines: Defines breaklines using the surface points nearest to the breakline that you draw. You do not have to snap to exact points.
- Wall breaklines: Defines the elevations of a wall-type object on both sides of the wall. For example, triangulation is linked to the bottom of the wall on one side, and then begins again from the top of the wall on the other side.
- **Standard breaklines**: Defines the breaklines using the exact points or polylines that you select.

Creating Contours to Use in Surface Generation



Creating Contour Data to Use in Surface Generation You can use vector contours, either polylines or contour objects, in surface generation. However, contour data differs greatly from data taken randomly in the field. Since contour map data is interpolated, the information may be less accurate than direct field data. The accuracy of the final surface model depends on the quality of both the contour map and the contour interval.

Unlike breaklines, which you create directly from within the Terrain Model Explorer, contours (as contour objects or polylines) must already be in the drawing in order to select them as surface data.

You can use contour data either as breaklines or as points when you add the contour data to the Terrain Model Explorer. When you add contour data to the surface folder, the Contour Weeding dialog box is displayed.

Contour Wee	ding		×
Create as	contour data		
Distance:	15.0000	Angle:	4.0000
Supplementi	ng factors		F 0000
Distance:	100.0000	Bulge:	1.0000
	OK _	Cancel	<u>H</u> elp

When the Create as Contour Data check box is selected, the contours are treated as breakline data, so no triangulation occurs across contours. When the Create as Contour Data check box is cleared, the contour vertices are treated as point data for the purposes of triangulation.

Creating Boundaries to Use in Surface Generation



Boundaries can help eliminate certain surface editing tasks.

- Boundaries control how the surface TIN lines extend to the outer limits of a surface.
- Boundaries hide internal areas of a surface.

Methods of Creating Surface Boundaries

Defining Surface Boundaries After Building a Surface For example, if a pond exists on the surface, you can either build the surface and then delete the triangulation lines that cross the pond, or you can create a boundary around the pond before building the surface so that the area of the pond is hidden. The same applies to outer surface boundary lines. You can either delete the TIN lines that extend beyond the survey limits after you build the surface, or you can create a boundary around the survey limits before building the surface.



The following illustration shows the effect of an outer boundary.

Building Surfaces

After you choose the information to include in a surface, you can build the surface. When you build a surface, all the surface data is processed and the program calculates the surface triangulation. The triangulation is calculated by combining the breakline, contour, DEM file data, and boundary data with the surface point data and interpolating the results.

Everything that you add to a surface folder in the Terrain Model Explorer can be used in the surface, but you can exclude certain data from build to build to examine different results.

Key Concepts

- You can have an unlimited number of surfaces in a project or drawing.
- Surfaces are stored in the following folder:

c:\Land Projects 3\<project name>\dtm

You can access surfaces simultaneously across a network. The first user who opens the surface has read/write access to it. All other users have read-only access.

Т	To build a surface		
St	eps	Use Search to locate	
1	From the Terrain menu, choose Terrain Model Explorer to display the Terrain Model Explorer dialog box.	Using the Terrain Model Explorer	
2	Right-click the Terrain folder and choose Create New Surface from the shortcut menu.	Creating a New Surface	
3	Open the new surface folder to display the icons.		
	 Surface1 TIN Data Point Groups Point Files DEM Files Contours Breaklines Boundaries Edit History Watershed 		
4	Add the data to be included in the surface. This data can be points, DEM files, contours, boundaries, or breaklines. To add a point group to the surface, right-click the Point Groups icon and select the point group.	Creating Surface Data and Adding It to the Surface Folders	
	To add contour data to the surface, Right-click the Contours icon and generate the contour data.		

To build a surface (continued) Use Search to locate Steps 5 After you add all the surface data, Right-click the surface Building a Surface name and choose Build Surface from the shortcut menu to display the Build Surface dialog box. Build Surface1 × Surface Watershed Description: Build options Log Errors to file E Build Watershed Compute Extended Statistics Surface data options Don't add data with elevation less than: 🔽 Use point file data 0 🔽 Use point group data 🔽 Use DEM file data Don't add data with elevation greater than: 🔽 Use breakline data 0 Convert proximity breaklines to standard 🔽 Use contour data Minimize flat triangles resulting from contour data Apply boundaries Apply Edit History

ΟK

Cancel

- **6** Type a description for the surface.
- 7 Choose the surface data to use in the surface by modifying the Surface Data Options. You can also choose to build the watershed model, calculate extended statistics, and create an error file when building the surface.
- 8 Click OK to build the surface. A message box is displayed when the surface has been built. Click OK to continue.



Creating Watershed Models

Drawing Water Drop Paths on the Current Surface

Building a Watershed Model

You can build a watershed model of the current surface either while building the surface or after building the surface. The program uses the surface TIN lines to calculate where water would flow along the surface.

You can then determine the watershed subareas, also known as *catchment areas* or *regions*. You can import boundaries into the drawing to delineate and number the watershed subareas, and you can determine the color of each type of watershed boundary by changing the color of the layer that the polyline boundary is assigned to.

After you build the watershed model, you can draw slope arrows to show the surface slopes, and use the Waterdrop command to draw polyline representations of the path that water would flow along the surface toward channels, as shown in the following illustration. If the channel splits, then new polylines are drawn to follow each water drop path.



Watershed subareas can have different types of drain targets. Drain targets of some subareas can be based on a boundary point, the point where water would drain off the surface. Drain targets of other subareas can be depression areas where the water flows.

- If the Watershed command determines that water from one TIN surface triangle could flow into more than one watershed subarea, then it splits the TIN triangle to make two triangles. This ensures that each watershed consists of complete triangles, and that the boundary of each watershed consists solely of TIN edges.
- If you use contour data to build the surface, then be sure to select the Minimize Flat Triangles Resulting from Contour Data option in the Build Surface dialog box to minimize the number of flat triangles that make up the TIN surface.

To build a watershed model		
Steps		Use Search to locate
1	From the Terrain menu, choose Terrain Model Explorer to display the Terrain Model Explorer dialog box. Create and build a surface model, if one does not exist.	Building a Surface
2	Click the plus sign (+) next to the surface name to display the surface data icons.	
3	Right-click the Watershed icon and choose Calculate Watershed from the shortcut menu.	Creating Watershed Models
4	Set the watershed model options. You can specify a minimum depression and minimum area that a depression must have in order to be included in the model.	
5	Click OK to calculate the watershed.	
St	eps	Use Search to locate
-------------	---	--
6	Right-click the Watershed icon and choose Import Watershed Boundaries from the shortcut menu to display the Watershed Display Settings dialog box.	Importing the Watershea Boundaries into the Drawing
	Watershed Display Settings X	
	Fill With Solids Display ID Numbers Erase Previous Lavers	
	Boundary Point: boundary_point	
	Boundary Segment: boundary_seg	
	Depression: depression	
	Flat Area: flat_area	
	Multi Drain:	
	Multi Drain Notch: ws_multi_drain_notch	
7	Select the options in the upper part of the dialog box to control the appearance of the watershed boundaries that are imported.	Watershed Display Settin Dialog Box
7	Select the options in the upper part of the dialog box to control the appearance of the watershed boundaries that are imported. Select the Fill With Solids check box to import solid fill areas, or clear the check box to import polyline boundaries.	Watershed Display Settin Dialog Box
7	Select the options in the upper part of the dialog box to control the appearance of the watershed boundaries that are imported. Select the Fill With Solids check box to import solid fill areas, or clear the check box to import polyline boundaries. When you import polyline boundaries, you can also select the Display ID Numbers check box to insert the watershed ID numbers within the polyline boundaries.	Watershed Display Settin Dialog Box
7 7 8	Select the options in the upper part of the dialog box to control the appearance of the watershed boundaries that are imported. Select the Fill With Solids check box to import solid fill areas, or clear the check box to import polyline boundaries. When you import polyline boundaries, you can also select the Display ID Numbers check box to insert the watershed ID numbers within the polyline boundaries. Select options for layers, and click OK to draw the boundaries on the surface.	Watershed Display Settir Dialog Box
7	Select the options in the upper part of the dialog box to control the appearance of the watershed boundaries that are imported. Select the Fill With Solids check box to import solid fill areas, or clear the check box to import polyline boundaries. When you import polyline boundaries, you can also select the Display ID Numbers check box to insert the watershed ID numbers within the polyline boundaries. Select options for layers, and click OK to draw the boundaries on the surface. TIP Set each layer to a different color after using this command so you can easily distinguish what type of watershed is outlined.	Watershed Display Settir Dialog Box
	Select the options in the upper part of the dialog box to control the appearance of the watershed boundaries that are imported. Select the Fill With Solids check box to import solid fill areas, or clear the check box to import polyline boundaries. When you import polyline boundaries, you can also select the Display ID Numbers check box to insert the watershed ID numbers within the polyline boundaries. Select options for layers, and click OK to draw the boundaries on the surface. TIP Set each layer to a different color after using this command so you can easily distinguish what type of watershed is outlined. To show how a drop of water would flow across the surface, you can trace that path in the drawing by choosing Water Drop from the Terrain ➤ Surface Utilities menu.	Watershed Display Settin Dialog Box Drawing Water Drop Pat on the Current Surface

Creating Finished Ground Data for Surfaces

Autodesk Land Desktop has many commands that you can use for creating finished ground data to use for surfaces. The following table summarizes a few of the point, 3D polyline, and contour grading methods you can use for creating finished ground surface data.

Methods for creating finished ground surface data				
Point Grading	3D Polyline Grading	Contour Grading		
Create points at the vertices of a 3D polyline	Create 3D polylines by specifying an elevation or a slope	Create contours along a proposed slope or grade		
Create points where two slopes or grades intersect	Fillet 3D polylines	Create multiple offsets of a contour at a specified interval and grade until a specified distance or elevation is reached		
Interpolate points between two selected points, based on total distance	Offset existing polylines in the drawing and apply elevational changes to the offset polylines	Copy existing contours that you can update with new grading data		

When you are ready to create the surface based on this grading data, you must add the surface data to the surface folder in Terrain Model Explorer. The following table shows how to process each type of grading data.

Processing different types of surface data			
Object How to process as surface data			
2D Polylines	Select as contours		
3D Polylines	Select as breaklines or as contours		
Points	Select as points or point groups		

174 Chapter 6 Working with Surfaces

Editing Surfaces



Editing Surfaces

After building a surface, you should evaluate its accuracy. Did the TIN lines generate as expected? If not, you can go back and define new surface data like points, breaklines, and boundaries. Or, if the changes are small, you can edit the surface TIN directly.

For example, you can

- Flip the faces of triangles to match ridges or depression areas.
- Add TIN lines to force retriangulation.
- Delete TIN lines that extend beyond survey boundaries.
- Add, delete, move, and edit points.
- Add breaklines.
- Paste surfaces together.
- Change the overall elevation of the surface by an increment.

For example, you can add a TIN line, which forces the other TIN lines that it crosses to retriangulate. You can add points to a surface, which also forces the surface to retriangulate. You can also trim out surface TIN lines that are drawn across a building pad or pond. The following illustration is an example of flipping TIN faces.



To combine two or more surfaces into one surface, paste them together. For example, you can create a surface that represents only part of a site, such as a surface that contains the grading data for a building pad. After you build this surface, you can paste it into the existing ground surface to create a finished ground surface that represents the entire site.

The surface TIN lines must be in the drawing in order for you to use the Edit Surface commands. Use the Import 3D Lines command from the Edit Surface menu to import surface lines you can edit. Be sure to set the surface you are working with as current. Only the data for the current surface is used when editing.

Edit History

Search Help for...

Edit History Edit History Information Whenever you rebuild a surface, you must reapply the edits that you made to it. To save time, all edits that you make to a surface are saved in the Edit History folder in the Terrain Model Explorer.



The Edit History folder stores all the edits that you make to a surface so you can automatically repeat them when you rebuild the surface later.

You can open the Edit History folder to view the edits you have made to a surface, as shown in the following illustration.

Name
Insert Line 4.295419,3.745879,100.000000 7.241556,4.586538,100.000000
Add Point 5.100196,4.007423,100.000000

When you select the Apply Edit History check box as you rebuild the surface, all previous edits are repeated in the order that you made them. You can also change the edit history list. To *not* repeat a step in the edit history, delete the item from the list.

Working with Surface Output and Visualization Tools

After you build a surface, you can use many different methods to output, display, and visualize the surface. For example, you can

- Label slopes.
- Generate contours for the surface.
- View cross sections and profiles of the surface.
- Output volumes.
- Create a 3D rendering of the surface for presentation.
- Create a slope-defined model that shows areas color-coded by slope range, indicating unbuildable land because of excessive slope.
- Create a model showing elevational banding of flood plain lines.



Surface Statistics Overall Statistics for a Surface

Viewing Surface Statistics

Statistics for each surface are visible by clicking the surface name icon in the left pane of the Terrain Model Explorer.

The following illustration shows the statistics for a surface, including the Extended Statistics.

Description:	Finished Ground Surfa	ice		
Locked By:	[leightk;PCL14011;FFF	A5		
- Surface Data-	1701	Cantanan	401	
Point Groups:		Contours:	431	
Point Files:	ļo	Breaklines:	0	
DEM Files:	0	Boundaries:	0	
		Estimated Total:	2132	
-Surface Statistics				
Revision #:	2	Minimum Ele	v: 96.580000	
No. of Points:	2127	Maximum Ele	ev: 127.660000	
Min Coordinates	N: 4838867.6	60000	E: 315564.280000	
Max Coordinate:	s: N: 4839161.2	270000	E: 315917.310000	
Extended Surface Statistics				
Number of triangles: 4202				
Mean elevation: 117.79 Minimum triangle area: 0.00				
Maximum triangle area: 415.20				
3D surface area:	74589.93		-1	
1				

In the Surface Data section of the statistics, each data type displays the number of points added to the surface. For example, in the previous illustration, 1701 points were added to the surface from a point group, and 431 points were added from contours.

Dynamically Viewing Elevational Characteristics of a Surface

When a surface is open, it is added into memory. You can retrieve elevational information as you move the pointing device across the surface. This is an excellent way to analyze surface characteristics without actually drafting objects into the drawing.

Key Concepts

- The surface does not need to be drafted in the drawing to obtain elevational information from it.
- Make sure that the proper surface is set as current.
- The elevation values are displayed in the status bar at the bottom of the screen.

To dynamically display surface elevations			
St	eps	Use Search to locate	
1	From the Terrain menu, choose Set Current Surface to make the surface model current.	Making a Surface Current	
2	From the Inquiry menu, choose Track Elevations.	Tracking Elevations	
3	As you move the pointing device to a point, the elevation at that point on the surface is displayed on the status bar.	Tracking Northing and Easting Coordinates	

Viewing Quick Sections of a Surface

To examine the elevational characteristics of a surface along a line, arc, or polyline, you can create quick section views. You can use these sections to review the elevational relief of the site and to determine whether modifications are required.

To create quick sections, select an existing object in the drawing, then right-click and select View Section from the shortcut menu. You can create section views from lines, curves, 2D and 3D polylines (including arc segments), spline fit polylines, and circles.

The section is displayed in a separate window. From this section window, you can control properties that affect the appearance of the section, such as grid settings, vertical exaggeration, and surface colors.



Creating Quick Surface Sections

Support for Multiple Surfaces

If multiple surfaces are turned on, the section view is created from the currently selected multiple surfaces. Use the Multiple Surfaces On/Off and Define Multiple Surfaces commands on the Terrain \succ Sections menu to control the use of multiple surfaces.

- If you grip edit the object from which you created the section view, the quick section views are dynamically updated. If you edit the surface, then you can update the section views using the Update Section Views command from the Terrain ➤ Sections menu.
- You can display more than one quick section at a time. Each section view is initially displayed at the same location on screen. You can move the windows to see multiple sections at once.
- You can copy quick sections to the clipboard or save them as Windows metafiles and then paste or insert them into the drawing.
- You can also use a separate group of commands on the Terrain ➤ Sections menu to plot straight-line sections in a drawing. These commands are Define Sections, Process Sections, and Import Sections.

Т	To view a quick surface section					
St	eps	Use Search to locate				
1	Select the current surface.	Making a Surface Current				
2	Draw an object, such as a polyline, from which to create the quick section.					
3	Select the object, right-click, and choose View Quick Section.	Creating Quick Surface Sections				
	NOTE You can also choose Sections ➤ View Quick Section from the Terrain menu to access this command.					
4	To modify the view in the section window, you can grip edit or move the object in the drawing. The section in the window is updated automatically.	Grip Editing Quick Section Lines				

Creating Contours

Contours portray the elevational values of a surface at specified intervals, as shown in the following illustration.



You can use Autodesk Land Desktop to create existing ground or finished ground contours. To create contours, you can

- Generate contours from the current Convert polylines to contours. surface model.
- Vectorize contours on a raster image. Digitize a paper contour map.
- Copy contours.

- Offset contours.

NOTE You can use contours to represent features other than elevations. For example, contours can represent rainfall intensity, soil contamination lines, and so on.

Creating Contours from a Surface

As you create contours from a surface, use a contour style that controls how the contour and contour labels display. For example, a contour style controls

- smoothing.
- grip display (for editing contours and contour labels).
- label text style.
- label position.

When you create contours, you must choose a style. You can also specify elevation ranges, contour intervals, and whether to create the contours as AEC contour objects or polylines. All contour definition, editing, and labeling commands work on both contour objects and polylines.

NOTE To edit AEC contour objects in another AutoCAD program (other than Autodesk Land Desktop), you must explode the contour objects because they are custom objects. Or, you can install the Object Enabler, which is available on the Autodesk Land Desktop CD-ROM.

When you create contours from a surface, you base the contours on a contour style. Use the Contour Style Manager to define and modify contour styles.

🞇 Contour Style Manager 💦		×
Contour Appearance Text Style Current Style: STANDA Contour Display C Contours and Grips	RD Label Display C Labels and Grips	Preview
Contours Only Line Width: 0 Smoothing Options	C Labels Only C Labels Off	
No Smoothing 0 Add Vertices Spline Curve Decre	5 10 	
		OK Cancel <u>H</u> elp

- Contour styles store groups of settings in the drawing so you can use them again without having to respecify the settings you want to use.
- Choose a contour style when you run the Create Contours command from the Terrain menu.
- You can use the Manage Styles tab to save contour styles to an external file and also to add contour styles from an external file. This is helpful when you use the same contour styles in more than one drawing or in different projects.
- You can click inside the Preview window on the Contour Style Manager and adjust the view angle of the previewed contours by moving the pointing device.

To create contours from a surface

Steps

Use Search to locate

1 From the Terrain menu, choose Create Contours to display the Create Contours dialog box.

Creating Contours from a Surface

Create Contours						<u>? ×</u>
Surface: AREA1	3		•			
Elevation Range						
From: 98	×	To:	126 🛨	Vertical Scale:	1 🔅	1
Low Elevation:	96.580	ŀ	ligh Elevation:	127.660	Reset Elevations	
- Intervals						
Both Minor and	Major	C Minor On	ly .	C Major Only		
Minor Interval:	2	÷ Lay	er: CONT-N	INR	•	
Major Interval:	10	÷ Lay	er: CONT-N	IJR	•	
Properties						
 Contour Objects 	Cont	our Style:	Standard		•	
C Polylines			Prev	iew	Style Manager >>	
		OK	Cancel	Help		

- 2 Select the surface from which you can create contours. By default, the current surface is displayed in the Surface box.
- 3 Specify the elevation range.
- 4 Specify the vertical scale.
- 5 Specify the minor and major contour intervals.
- 6 Under Properties, choose either contour objects or polylines.
- 7 To create contour objects, under Properties, click Style Manager to display the Contour Style Manager dialog box.
 Managing Contour Styles Using the Contour Styles Manager

Steps		Use Search to locate
8	Use the Contour Style Manager dialog box to smooth contours, and to specify the contour appearance, the text style for contour labels, and the label position. You can also use this dialog box to save contour styles and add styles from other drawings.	
9	Click OK to return to the Contour Style Manager dialog box, and then click OK to generate the contours.	
10	You can label the contours using the commands in the Terrain ➤ Contour Labels menu.	Labeling Contours

Using a Surface Boundary to Contour Around a Building or Pond

Usually you do not draft contours inside a building foundation or water-filled pond. One way to prevent contours from being drafted within these features is to trim everything within the feature by deleting the surface lines in these areas.

Another method is to hide portions of the surface model using a surface boundary. By hiding certain areas, you can prevent the areas from being contoured. When you create an internal boundary, the surface faces remain intact. They are hidden only until you remove the boundary.

- No elevational information for the surface is available while an area is hidden by a boundary.
- Depending on how well the surface follows the boundary polygon, you may want to make the surface boundary act as a non-destructive breakline.

To contour around a pond by using a surface boundary

Ste	eps	Use Search to locate
1	Select the current surface.	Making a Surface Current
2	If the pond that you define as a boundary is not outlined by a polyline, then use the PLINE command to draw the boundary.	Pline Command
3	From the Terrain menu, choose Edit Surface ➤ Surface Boundaries.	Defining Surface Boundaries After Building a Surface
4	Type Add to add a boundary, press ENTER, and then type No to not remove any existing boundaries.	
5	Select the polyline boundary.	
6	You can specify that anything inside the polyline is hidden (Hide) or shown (Show). For this example, specify Hide to hide the area inside the pond polyline.	
7	You are prompted whether to create breaklines along the edges.	
	If you type Yes , a non-destructive breakline is created around the polygon boundary area.	
8	Press ENTER at the Select polyline for boundary prompt to end the command.	
	The vertices on the boundary are added to the triangulation. The elevations for the breakline are retrieved from the surface model.	
9	Type Yes to redraw the surface so you can review the surface edits.	
10	Use the Create Contours command from the Terrain menu to create contours from the surface. As the contours are generated, you can see that they are not drafted within the polygonal boundary.	Creating Contours From a Surface

Search Help for...

Volume Calculation Methods

Comparing Two Surfaces to Calculate Volumes

You can calculate volumes or depths between surfaces by comparing them. For example, you may want to compare existing ground surface data with as-built data. Or, if you have borehole data, then you may want to calculate the volumes between the top surface and rock.

Autodesk Land Desktop includes three volume calculation methods:

- **Grid method**: Creates a volume surface that is based on a grid that compares elevational information between the first and second surface.
- **Composite method**: Creates a volume surface that includes all the surface points from the first and second surface. The Z values in the new surface are the elevational difference between the first and second surface.
- **Section method**: Calculates volumes based on sampled cross sections.

You can also calculate parcel volumes, which are based on parcels that exist within the larger site.

In all cases, you need two surface models. From the two surfaces, you must define a stratum, which specifies the two surfaces used in volume calculations. Before you can calculate volumes, you must define a site that represents the stratum area for which you want to calculate volumes.

- The volume results are only as good as the surface definitions. The more complete the surface data, the better the volume calculations.
- The grid method offers a quick volume result. Because it is a grid, however, you can potentially miss surface irregularities, such as a curb or depressions, which would affect the volume results. This method creates a volume surface that you can view and manage from the Terrain Model Explorer.
- The composite method uses all the data from the first and second surfaces. This method creates a volume surface, and the results are the exact surface difference total. This method creates a volume surface that you can view and manage from the Terrain Model Explorer.
- The section method interpolates cross sections from the two surfaces of the current stratum, and generates volumes using one of two methods: Prismoidal or Average End Area. This gives you sections that you can plot to verify areas and submittals. This method does not create a volume surface.

Т	To calculate volumes					
St	eps	Use Search to locate				
1 Define at least two surfaces, such as existing ground and proposed ground.		Building a Surface				
2	From the Terrain menu, choose Select Current Stratum to create a stratum that defines the two surfaces that you compare.	Defining a Stratum				
3	From the Terrain menu choose Site Definition ➤ Define Site to define the site area.	Defining a Site for Volume Calculations				
	A site is essentially a rectangular area in which all volume calculations are performed. It also defines the grid size that is used when creating a grid surface.					
4	To calculate volumes using the section method, select Terrain \succ Section Volumes \succ Sample Sections to generate the cross section data.	Sampling Section Data for Volume Calculations				
5	Calculate cut/fill volumes for the site. Volumes are calculated based on the method that you choose.	Calculating Total Site Volumes Using the Grid				
	 To use the grid method, select Terrain ➤ Grid Volumes ➤ Calculate Total Site Volume. To use the composite method, select Terrain ➤ Composite Volumes ➤ Calculate Total 	Method Calculating Total Site Volumes Using the				
	Site Volume.	Composite Method				
	■ To use the section method, select Terrain ➤ Section Volumes ➤ Calculate Volume Total.	Calculating Total Site Volumes Using the Section Method				

To calculate volumes (continued)

Steps

Use Search to locate

6 You can create volume reports, print the results, or include Creating a Total Volume them in a table in the drawing by using commands from the Terrain ➤ Volume Reports menu, as shown in the following illustration.

Table for a Site

Site Volumes				×
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Site U	Jolume Table: Una	adjusted	
	Cut	Fill	Net	
	cu. yds	cu. yds	cu. yds	Method
Site: Parki Stratum:	ng Lot earthwork1 exis 3 111	stingground PROF 3812 4302	20SED SURFACE 3809 4191	(F) Grid (F) Composite
Print T	o File	ОК		

7 If you used the section volume calculation methods, then *Plotting a Single Volume* you can plot the cross sections in the drawing by selecting Section Terrain ➤ Section Volumes ➤ Plot Single.

Presenting Cut/Fill Results



Using the Grid Method Using the Composite Method

You can create presentation graphics to help highlight cut/fill areas in a site. When you use the composite or grid surface volume calculation methods to calculate the volumes between two surfaces, a volume surface is made. This surface is the difference between the two surfaces, which you can use to demonstrate the cut/fill areas.

Key Concepts

- You can view and manage volume surfaces from within the Terrain Model Explorer.
- You can view a grid of ticks and labels that indicate the cut/fill depth throughout the site.
- You can create a range map that displays the cut areas in one color and the fill areas in another.
- You can create cut/fill contours on a volume surface. The volume surface Z value is the cut/fill depth instead of an elevational value.

Т	o present volumes results	
St	eps	Use Search to locate
1	Select the volume surface as the current surface.	Making a Surface Current
2	From the Terrain menu, choose Create Contours to create cut/fill contours.	Creating Contours from a Surface
3	If you used the grid method to calculate volumes, then select Terrain \succ Grid Volumes \succ Grid Volume Ticks to draw grid ticks that display the elevation difference between existing and proposed ground.	Creating a Grid of Ticks That Show Cut and Fill Areas on Volume Surfaces

Creating a 3D Map to Present Elevation Conditions

After you create a surface, you can use several tools to help you view the surface in three dimensions. For example, you can use various elevation and slope commands from the Terrain > Surface Display menu to insert 3D faces into the drawing. These commands place surface triangles that fall within a defined elevation or slope range onto specific layers. You can then make each layer a different color. For example, you can place portions of the site that fall within a 100' to 105' elevation range on a blue layer to distinguish the elevation range.

Key Concepts

- You can draw the range view as 2D solids or 3D faces, and you can view the faces in plan or 3D perspective.
- You can use *banding methods*, which automatically splits surface triangles to properly match the range that you define. In other words, if you



Creating 3D Faces Using the Banding Method

Changing the Surface Display Based on Elevation Ranges created the triangle between points that range from 90'–120', then the program would break this into individual faces at 90', 100', 110', and 120'. This ensures that the elevational banding is properly presented. This does not modify the surface, but it breaks the plotted faces to match the elevational criteria.

Т	o create an elevational range view	
St	eps	Use Search to locate
1	Select the current surface.	Making a Surface Current
2	From the Terrain menu, choose Surface Display ➤ Elevation Settings to define the elevational ranges, layers, and layer colors.	Changing the Surface Elevation Shading Settings
	Where there is minimal elevational exaggeration, you can also define vertical scaling to help see site features.	
3	Generate the range view by selecting an elevational range view command. From the Terrain menu, choose Surface Display \succ Average - 3D Faces or Banding - 3D Faces.	Creating 2D Solids Using the Banding Method
		Creating 3D Faces Using the Banding Method
4	To manage the layers on which you created the range views, select Terrain \succ Terrain Layers \succ Range Layers.	Managing the Range Layers

Projecting 2D Lines onto a 3D Grid

You can project 2D objects such as lines, curves, and polylines from a flat drawing plane onto a 3D surface grid. This is an effective way to present information such as a road location, building outline, or property boundary.

- You can project lines, curves, and polylines onto the grid.
- The objects are drawn on a separate layer.
- For a smoother site, set the number of "facets" per grid face to a higher number.
- If the site contains details such as walls or curbs, you should use the 3D Faces command on the Terrain ➤ Surface Display menu. This option imports all the surface triangles as 3D faces. All surface details show up on the imported faces.

To project objects onto a grid

St	eps	Use Search to locate
1	Select the current surface.	Making a Surface Current
2	Make sure you are working in plan view.	Change to a View of the XY Plane
3	From the Terrain menu, choose Surface Display ➤ Grid of 3D Faces to create a grid of 3D faces. You have complete control over grid location, size, vertical exaggeration, and facets per grid face.	Creating a Surface Grid of 3D Faces
4	Select all lines, curves, and polylines to be projected, and then specify a layer to draw them on.	
5	To view the site in 3D, you can use either the DVIEW or VPOINT command, or you can use the Object Viewer from the Utilities menu.	Using the Object Viewer

Working with Alignments and Parcels

Creating alignments and parcels with Autodesk Land Desktop is a two-step process. First, you create the geometry, such as the roadway centerlines and parcel boundaries, and then you define the geometry as alignments and parcels.

7

In this chapter

- Working with alignments
- Working with parcels

Introduction

You can draft horizontal alignments and parcels at any time during the project process. You can begin by drawing objects, such as lines, curves, spirals, or polylines, to represent the geometry of an alignment or parcel. Then, you can define an alignment or parcel to a database. All data is stored in an external database and all drawings in a project can access that data.

Because of the external database, you do not need to draft alignments or parcels in a drawing to reference them. After you define objects, you can delete them from the drawing. Then, if you must visually reference alignments or parcels, you can import them into the drawing.

Working with Alignments

Search Help for...

Horizontal Alignments The Horizontal Alignment Database

The plan view of roadway geometry is called a *horizontal alignment*. For alignments, you can define roadway centerlines and create offsets that represent lanes, shoulders, and rights-of-way. You can create station labels along an alignment, and generate stakeout reports for surveyors.

Because alignment definitions are stored in a database outside the drawing, you have the following added flexibility when managing alignments:

- If other projects contain alignments that you want to include in a current project, then you can merge alignment databases and import alignments into a drawing.
- If someone on a network needs write access to the alignment you have set as current, then you can close the alignment database or select a different current alignment while you keep a drawing open.
- It is not necessary to keep alignment objects in a drawing. You can delete them and import the alignments only when needed.

You can edit the data in the alignment database by using the Alignment Editor. Any changes that you make to an alignment in the Alignment Editor are updated in the drawing. The Alignment Editor can also generate reports.

Autodesk[®] Civil Design provides advanced roadway design capabilities, such as profile and cross section design. For more information about Autodesk Civil Design, contact your authorized Autodesk dealer.

Multi-User Alignment Database

The alignment database can be accessed by multiple people working over a network. Locking works on a per-alignment basis. To release the lock on an alignment, you can set a different alignment current or you can close the Alignment database.

To share an alignment database with someone using Release 1 of AutoCAD Land Development Desktop, you can save the alignment database in the previous format of the alignment database as a *project.adb* file. Choose the Save as .adb command from the Alignments \triangleright Alignment Commands menu.

Drawing Alignment Geometry

Begin an alignment design by drawing alignment geometry. You need to draw an alignment centerline only—you can create offsets later by using an automated offset routine. To draw an alignment centerline, you can use line, arc, and spiral commands from the Lines/Curves menu, as well as AutoCAD commands such as ARC, LINE, PLINE, and FILLET. You can also draw alignments as Autodesk Survey Figures either in the field using the Autodesk Survey Command Language to input the data in a data collector, or on the Autodesk[®] Survey command line.

When you draw the alignment, use object snaps to ensure that no gaps exist between each object that makes up an alignment.

To create spirals, use the Spiral commands from the Lines/Curves menu. If you know the intended speed for an alignment, then you can draw spirals using an AASHTO or user-defined speed table, which automatically calculates superelevation information for an alignment.

- If you use the Lines/Curves menu commands instead of PLINE or LINE, then the lines, curves, and spirals are drawn tangent to their adjacent object.
- You can define more than one alignment from the same alignment geometry.

To create alignment geometry

St	eps	Use Search to locate
1	Create a layer on which the alignment centerline is to be drawn. Use a name such as "CL" for Centerline.	Create and Name Layers
2	Use one of the line drawing options from the Lines/Curves menu.	Drawing Lines
3	To add curves, use the curve commands from the Lines/Curves menu.	Drawing Curves
	You can add a curve between two tangents, from the end of a tangent, and more. These options ensure that the curve is drawn tangent to the selected lines.	
4	To draw a spiral, use one of the spiral commands from the Lines/Curves menu.	Drawing Spirals

Defining an Object as a Road Alignment

By defining figure geometry as an alignment, all individual geometric components (lines, arcs, and spirals) become linked as a single object, and alignment data is saved to the database in the project folder.

When you store this data in an external database, you can access the alignments from all drawings in the project. After you define an alignment, it is not necessary to draft the alignment in a drawing. All commands that refer to the alignment geometry reference the database.

When you define an alignment, point data is not added to the point database. However, you can place points along the alignment using the

Create Points - Alignments commands from the Points menu, as shown in the following illustration.



To define an alignment

St	eps	Use Search to locate
1	Draw the alignment geometry.	Defining Alignments
2	If you drew an alignment geometry using lines, curves, and spirals, then select Define From Objects from the Alignments menu to define the alignment.	Defining an Alignment from Objects
	If you drew an alignment using a polyline, then select Define From Polyline from the Alignments menu.	Defining an Alignment from a Polyline
	When you define the alignment, you are prompted for essential information such as the alignment name, description, starting station, and objects that comprise the alignment.	
_		

Making an Alignment Current

When you work with alignments, make sure that the correct alignment is current. Alignment commands work only with a current alignment, and only one alignment can be current at a time. When you define an alignment, it becomes the current alignment automatically. You can select the current alignment either from a drawing, from the Alignment Librarian, or by alignment number.

To display the Alignment Librarian, as shown in the following illustration, choose Set Current Alignment from the Alignments menu and when you are prompted to select an alignment, press ENTER.

	Alignme	<mark>nt Librari</mark>	an			×
[- Current A	lignment –				
	Number:		9			
	Descripti	ion:	east service ro	ad seguin tra	il	
	Start Sta	tion:	20000.000			
	End Stat	ion:	21036.187			
l						
:	Selection					_
	Number	Name			Description	
	1	A1b			Alignment #1 previously defi	
	10	p_ew-n			ramp e/w-n seguin trail	
	2	A2b			Alignment #2 previously defi	
	3	p3_hwy6	9		hwy 69 twp of foley revised j	
	4	p_seguin			seguin trail	
	5	p_e-ws			ramp e-w/s seguin trail	
	6	p_n-ew			ramp n-e/w seguin trail	
	7	p_w-s			ramp w-s seguin trail	
	8	p_s-e			ramp s-e seguin trail	
	9	p_esr			east service road seguin trail	
	Name:	p_6	esr			
		C	IK	Cancel	Help	

- When you make an alignment current, a lock file is created for the alignment so no one else can obtain write access to that alignment.
- You can view the alignment locks by using the Project Manager command from the Projects menu. Click File Locks to view the project locks.
- To release a lock on the current alignment, you can either make a different alignment current or you can use the Close Database command from the Alignments ➤ Alignment Commands menu to close the database and release the lock.

To make an alignment current Use Search to locate Steps 1 From the Alignments menu, choose Set Making an Alignment Current Alignment. Current The cursor turns into a pickbox. 2 Select the alignment using one of the following methods: ■ If the alignment is drafted in the drawing, then click the alignment with the pickbox. ■ When prompted to select an alignment, press ENTER, and then select the alignment from the Alignment Librarian. ■ When prompted to select an alignment, press ENTER. Click Cancel to close the Alignment Librarian, and then type the number of the alignment to make it current.

Editing a Road Alignment

To edit an alignment, you can either modify the geometry and redefine the alignment, or you can modify the alignment data from within the Horizontal Alignment Editor.

Horizontal Align	ment Editor					×
Project: Tutorial1	Alignment: outl	et				
Edit-						
Insert F	2	Delete Pl	E dit C	Curve	Edit Spiral	
Station	Northing	Easting	- Distance	Direction		
0+00	4838844.0193	315825.6277	46.17	S 72-27-08 W	Home	
0+46.17	4838830.0994	315781.6074	59.59	S 44-26-07 W		
1+05.76	4838787.5481	315739.8867	24.26	S 41-01-09 W	Page Up	
1+30.02	4838769.2436	315723.9640			Up	
						1
			-		Down	
					Page Down	
					End	
Reports						
Settinas	Station	1 Curv	e Sta	ation/Curve	By Increment	
	OK	Cance	l <u>H</u> elp	р	Save	

Use the Horizontal Alignment Editor to modify individual curve, tangent, and spiral geometry, and to generate reports based on the alignment. After you save the changes, drawing objects are automatically updated, so you do not need to redefine the alignment geometry.

- The Horizontal Alignment Editor is linked dynamically to the drawing. Changes that you make in the Editor update the alignment automatically in the drawing.
- You can use the Horizontal Alignment Editor to modify PIs (Points of Intersection) and alignment curves and spirals.
- The editor is similar to a spreadsheet. You must select inside the cell that you want to modify.
- To change the alignment properties, such as the alignment layer, color, linetype, or description, use the Modify Properties command from the Alignments ➤ Alignment Commands menu.

Т	o edit a road alignment	
St	eps	Use Search to locate
1	Select the current alignment.	Making an Alignment Current
2	From the Alignments menu, choose Edit to display the Horizontal Alignment Editor dialog box.	Editing Horizontal Alignments
3	To edit a curve, place the cursor in a cell at a curve point of intersection (PI), and then click Edit Curve.	Editing a Horizontal Alignment Curve
4	To edit a spiral, place the cursor in a cell at a spiral point of intersection, and then click Edit Spiral.	Editing a Horizontal Alignment Spiral
5	After you have finished editing, click OK to save all changes in the database and update the graphics.	



Importing and Deleting Alignments

Merging Alignments from Different Projects Deleting and Importing Alignments

If you do not want to view an alignment in a drawing, then you can do the following:

- Turn off or freeze the layer that the alignment is on.
- Erase the alignment using the ERASE command.
- Use the Delete command from the Alignments menu.

Erasing the alignment does not remove the alignment database definition. To redisplay the alignment in the drawing, import the alignment.

You can use the Delete command to delete the alignment from only the drawing (similar to the ERASE command) or to delete the alignment from both the drawing and database. Select that data to delete on the command line. If you delete the alignment from only the drawing, then you can use the Import command from the Alignments menu to re-import it into the drawing.

If you delete the alignment from the database, then you can redefine the alignment from the drawing objects, if necessary. If you delete the alignment from both the drawing and the database, then you cannot restore the alignment.

Use the Import command to bring a defined alignment into a drawing; for example, when you want to bring project alignments into a new drawing in a project. You can also use the Import command to bring alignments into the drawing after you have merged alignments from another project into the current project's alignment database.

To delete or import multiple alignments at a time, then use the Multiple Selections command from the Alignments ➤ Alignment Commands menu.

To delete multiple alignments from the drawing

Steps

Use Search to locate

1 From the Alignments menu, choose Alignment Commands ➤ Multiple Selections to display the Multiple Alignments Librarian. Importing or Deleting Multiple Alignments Simultaneously

Multiple	Alignments Lib	rarian			<u>د</u>
election					
Number	Name		Description		
1 10 2 3 4 5 6 6 7 7 8 9	A1b p_ewn A2b p_seguin p_s-eguin p_e-ws p_m-ew p_w-s p_s-e p_se		Alignment #1 prev ramp e/wn seguin Alignment #2 prev hwy 63 twp of fold seguin trail ramp e-w/s seguin ramp n-e/w seguin ramp s-s seguin tr east service road	iously defined t trail juskly defined ju trail t trail ail ail seguin trail	
 ↓ Delete Op 	otions				<u> </u>
🗖 Delei	te From Screen	🗖 Delete	From Database	E Delete Profile Files	e and Cross Section
0	к	Select	Import	Delete	Help

- 2 Select the alignments that you want to delete.
- 3 Select one or more Delete Options. You can delete the alignment from the screen, the database, or both. You can also delete any vertical files that are associated with the alignment. These are the alignment profile and cross section files that are created with Autodesk Civil Design.
 4 Click Delete to delete the selected alignments. A confirmation dialog box is displayed. Click Yes to confirm the deletion.
 5 If you want to set an alignment current before you close the Multiple Selections dialog box, then select the alignment name you want to set as current, and then click Select.

Drafting Road Results

As you create a base map, you can complete a final drafting of an alignment by adding roadway offsets, roadway stationing, and station and offset spot labels.

You can also use the Autodesk Map commands to create a network topology of the alignments from which you can calculate the shortest paths to destinations, or show graphically the traffic volumes that travel along each alignment.

- All annotation is based on the current alignment in the database.
- To station or create offsets for an alignment, it must be defined to the database.

draft road result	IS			
s				Use Search to locate
elect the current al	ignment.			Making an Alignment Current
rom the Alignment lisplay the Alignme	ts menu, ch nts Offset S	oose Creat ettings dial	e Offsets to og box.	Creating Offsets for an Alignment
Alignment Offset Settings				×
Define offset alignments		Na	ame prefix (optional):	
E 2. <i>"</i> .				
I Uuter offset	Left offset:	30.000	Right offset:	30.000
Layer: ROW	Left name:		Right name:	
Second offset	Left offset:	0.000	Right offset:	0.000
Layer: SHOULDER	Left name:		Right name:	
Third offset	Left offset:	0.000	Right offset:	0.000
Layer: SIDEWALK	Left name:		Right name:	
🔽 Inner offset	Left offset:	12.000	Right offset:	12.000
Layer: EOP	Left name:		Right name:	
	OK	Cancel	<u>H</u> elp	

Ste	ps Use Search to	locate
3	Select the offsets that you want to create, and then enter names for them.	
ł	To define the offsets to the Horizontal Alignment Database, select the Define Offset Alignments check box.	
;	Click OK to create the offsets.	
5	From the Alignments menu, choose Station Display Changing the St Format. Display Format	tation
	Edit Station Format	
	Edit Station Format	
	Edit Station Format X Preview 1+00 Preview value: 100.0000	
	Edit Station Format ×I Preview 1+00 Numeric Format Options	
	Edit Station Format × Preview 1+00 Numeric Format Options Invincement of the second se	
	Edit Station Format × Preview 1+00 Preview value: 100.0000 Numeric Format Options Image: Show leading zeros Minimum display width: 2 If Use () for negative values Decimal precision: 2	
	Edit Station Format X Preview 1+00 Preview value: 100.0000 Numeric Format Options In the second	
	Edit Station Format X Preview 1+00 Preview value: 100.0000 Numeric Format Options Image: Show leading zeros Minimum display width: 2 Show leading zeros Minimum display width: 2 Use () for negative values Decimal precision: 2 Image: Drop decimal for even values Decimal character: . Station/Chainage Numeric Format . .	
	Edit Station Format X Preview 1+00 Preview value: 100.0000 Numeric Format Options Image: Comparison of the second s	

7 Select the station format options, and click OK.

To draft road results (continued)

Steps

Use Search to locate

8 From the Alignments menu, choose Station Label Settings to change the station label settings.

Alignment Station Label Settings		×
Station labels	Layer	STALBL
Station point labels	Layer	STAPTS
Station equations labels	Layer	STAEQU
Perpendicular labels		
Stations read along road		
Plus sign location		
Station label increment		100.000
Station tick increment		50.000
Station label offset		15.000
OK Cancel	Hel	p
OK Cancel	<u>H</u> el	P

Changing the Alignment Station Label Settings

9 From the Alignments menu, choose Create Station Labels to create station labels. The labels are displayed as shown in the following illustration. Creating Station Labels on an Alignment



Working with Parcels



Working with Parcels Defining Parcels When you create base maps or work with subdivisions, you must define *parcels* of land. You can define parcels from survey figures, points, lines, curves, or polylines. Parcel boundaries define the area and the limits of each parcel. If you define parcels by area, then you can use the Parcel Sizing commands to create parcels of exact areas.

Like alignments, parcel definitions are stored in an external database so multiple people can access them. Because parcel definitions are stored externally, you can delete the geometry in the drawing and still reference the parcel.

When defining parcels, you can label them with a parcel number, area, and description. To manage parcels, use the Parcel Manager command from the Parcels menu. You can use this command to report map check and inverse data, as well as to import, delete, and rename parcels.

After you define a parcel, you can calculate its earthwork volumes using the grid and composite volume methods. For more information about earthwork, see "Comparing Two Surfaces to Calculate Volumes" on page 185.

You can use the Autodesk Map commands to create a database of parcel numbers, owners, cost, and so on to help manage parcel maps.

Drawing Parcel Geometry

To draw the parcel boundaries, you can use the commands from the Lines/Curves menu, or other AutoCAD commands such as LINE or PLINE. You can also define parcel boundaries from points.

NOTE Do not use spirals in parcel boundaries. Spirals cause incorrect areas to be reported.

You can also use Autodesk[®]Survey to draw parcel boundaries as Autodesk Survey Figures. You can use the Autodesk Survey Command Language to input the data in a data collector, or you can input the data using the Autodesk Survey command line.

NOTE Be sure to draw the parcels as closed regions. If any of the joining lines has a break, then you cannot calculate areas.



Drawing Parcels

If you use polylines to draw parcel geometry, then you must break crossing polylines before defining the parcels. Also, delete any duplicate lines that you may have drawn where two parcels abut each other. You can break crossing lines and erase duplicate lines by using the Autodesk Map Cleanup command.

Draw Parcel Geometry Based on Area



Sizing Parcels to a Specified Area

To draw a parcel as an exact area, use the Parcel Sizing commands. Draw the parcel with only one open segment, and then use one of the Parcel Sizing commands to close the segment. Parcel Sizing commands include Slide Bearing, Radial, Swing on Line, and Swing on Curve.

The following illustration shows how a parcel is defined by using the Slide Bearing command.



Depending on the parcel settings, these commands can define the parcel to the parcel database, and they can also label the parcel that is calculated.

You cannot use the Parcel Sizing commands to modify a parcel that is already defined to the parcel database. To change a parcel definition, you must delete the existing parcel definition and redefine the parcel. For more information about deleting parcels, see "Managing Parcels" on page 207.

Defining Parcels to the Parcel Database

As with alignments, you must define parcels to the parcel database so that the individual geometric component points, lines, arcs, or polylines, become linked as a single object. This parcel data is stored in a database in the project folder. When you define parcels to the database, you can label them and perform map check calculations on them, depending on what you specify in Parcel Settings.

eps		Use Search to locate
Draw a parcel	using the PLINE command.	Drawing Parcels
From the Parcels menu, choose Parcel Settings to display the Parcel Settings dialog box.		Changing the Parcel Settings
Parcel Settings Options Define parcels Map check acr Truncate area I Parcel Numbering Labels on Square Feet/Meter Labels on	is sized Label parcels as defined sss chord Automatic Label Placement abels Include Parcel Lines on Import Number 1 Text Style L100 Prefix Select : Labeling Precision 0 Text style L100	
Area suffix sq Acres/Hectares La Labels on Area suffix ac	it 0 ▲ ▶ 8 Select being Precision 2 Text style L100 es 0 ▲ ▶ 8 Select	
Parcel layer Label layer	PARCELS PARCELLBLS OK Cancel Help	

the Automatic Label Placement check boxes.
4 Under Parcel Numbering, select the Sequential On

check box to number the parcels sequentially. If you clear this check box, then you are prompted for

the parcel number each time you define a parcel. You can use alpha-numeric characters for parcel numbers.

5 Under Parcel Numbering, select the Labels On check box to label each parcel with its number.

To define parcels to the parcel database (continued)

Steps		Use Search to locate	
6	Under Square Feet/Meters Labeling, select the Labels On check box to label each parcel with its area.		
7	Click OK.		
8	From the Parcels menu, choose Define from Polylines.	Defining a Parcel from a Polyline	
9	Select the polyline that represents the parcel. The parcel is then defined to the parcel database.		

Managing Parcels

You can use the Parcel Manager to

- Import, delete, and rename parcels.
- Report area, inverse, and map check information.

Parcel Manager x Select parcel: lot1 lot2 Parcel Settings. lot3 Output Settings... lot4 lot5 Select All lot6 Clear All Area. Inverse.. Map Check. Import Delete Rename OK <u>H</u>elp Cancel

To access the Parcel Manager, shown in the following illustration, choose Parcel Manager from the Parcels menu.

, Search Help for... Importing Parcel Lines and Labels

Deleting Parcels

Removing Parcels



- Use the Rename option to assign alpha-numeric names to the parcels.
- Use the Import option to import parcels into a drawing if you have erased the parcel lines or if you want the parcels to be visible in a different project drawing. Erasing the parcels with the ERASE command does not remove the parcel database definitions. To redisplay the parcels in the drawing, import them with the Parcel Manager.
- Use the Delete option to permanently delete the parcels. This option deletes the parcel from the parcel database.
- You can report parcel information such as area, perimeter, map check, and inverse results. After you review the results, you can either print them or save them to a text file for final reports.
- If you created a parcel definition from an Autodesk Survey figure, then you can report additional data about the parcels by using the Autodesk Survey figure display, inverse, map check, and perimeter closure commands.

To report parcel areas				
eps	Use Search to locate			
Define the parcel to the parcel database.	Defining Parcels			
From the Parcels menu, choose Parcel Manager to display the Parcel Manager dialog box.	Managing Parcels			
In the Select Parcel list, select one or more parcels about which you want to report information.				
When you select a parcel, it is marked with an asterisk. In the following illustration, parcels <i>lot1</i> and <i>lot2</i> are selected.				
Select parcet * lot1 * lot2 lot3 lot4				
Click Output Settings and select the report options, such as the report name and destination.	Changing the Output Settings - concept			
Click OK to close the Output Settings dialog box.	5 1			
Click Area to create an area report.	Reporting Parcel Area, Inverse, or Map Check Data			
	b report parcel areas eps Define the parcel to the parcel database. From the Parcels menu, choose Parcel Manager to display the Parcel Manager dialog box. In the Select Parcel list, select one or more parcels about which you want to report information. When you select a parcel, it is marked with an asterisk. In the following illustration, parcels <i>lot1</i> and <i>lot2</i> are selected. Select parcet * lot1 * lot2 lot3 lot4 Click Output Settings and select the report options, such as the report name and destination. Click OK to close the Output Settings dialog box. Click Area to create an area report.			
Listing and Annotating Plans

To check object characteristics, you can perform inquiries which list object data at the command line or in a dialog box. To label objects with selected information, you can create dynamic and static labels, and you can create object tables that list detailed information about tagged objects in the drawing.

8

In this chapter

- Listing object data
- Labeling objects

Introduction

To check object characteristics, you can perform an *inquiry* on a drawing object. An inquiry shows you information about the selected object on the command line, the status bar, or in a tracking window.

If you want a more permanent solution for identifying drawing objects especially when you are ready to plot the drawing—you can label the drawing objects at any time during the drawing process. Autodesk Land Desktop can create *dynamic* labels, which update whenever you edit the drawing objects. If you do not want labels to update automatically, then you can create *static* labels.

To annotate a drawing manually, then you can create text (TEXT), multi-line text (MTEXT), or text on a curve (CTEXT). Both text and multi-line text do not move or update when a drawing changes; however, as a curve is modified, the curve text moves with it. For more information about creating text, see "Working with Text" on page 143.

Listing Object Data

Search Help for...

To quickly view data about objects, use the Inquiry commands. Autodesk Land Desktop has two types of inquiry commands:

Using the Inquiry Commands

Extract or Calculate Geometric Information from Objects

- CAD-based
- Autodesk Land Desktop-specific

CAD-Based Inquiry Commands

These commands include the following commonly used commands that you can select from the Tools ➤ Inquiry menu:

Inquiry commands	
Command	Function
Distance	Measures the distance between two points.
Area	Calculates the area and perimeter of objects or defined areas.

Inquiry commands (continued)

Command	Function	
Region/Mass Properties	Calculates and displays the mass properties of regions or solids.	
List	Displays information of selected objects.	
ID Point	Displays the coordinate values of a location.	
Time	Displays the date and time statistics of a drawing.	
Status	s Displays drawing statistics, mode, and extents.	
Set Variable	Lists or changes the values of system variables.	

Autodesk Land Desktop Inquiry Commands

To query Autodesk Land Desktop-specific objects, use the Inquiry commands. Most commands on the Inquiry menu are list-based, meaning that the information is displayed on the command line. Track North/East, however, uses a dynamic tracking window that updates when you move the pointing device.

Autodesk Land Desktop has several other specific, reporting and listing commands. For example, you can

- List the raster images that are inserted into a drawing and locate the source files by using the Manage command from the Map ➤ Image menu.
- List the alignments that are defined in the project by using the List Defined command from the Alignments ➤ Alignment Commands menu.
- List the breaklines that are defined in the project by using the List Breaklines command from the Breaklines shortcut menu in the Terrain Model Explorer.
- Show statistics for a surface model in the Terrain Model Explorer.
- Create alignment, stakeout, volume, and parcel reports.

To track the elevation of a surface

Steps		Use Search to locate	
1	Build a surface.	Building a Surface	
2	Make that surface the current surface.	Making a Surface Current	
3	From the Inquiry menu, choose Track Elevation.	Tracking Elevations	
4	Move the pointing device over the surface. The surface elevation is displayed on the status bar. If you		

move the pointing device outside the surface area, then an out-of-bounds message is displayed.

To list the station and offset of a location in relation to the current alignment

Steps		Use Search to locate
1	Define an alignment.	Defining Alignments
2	From the Inquiry menu, choose Station/Offset Alignment.	Listing the Station and Offset of a Location in Relation to the Current Alignment
3	Select a location in the drawing area that is adjacent to the	

3 Select a location in the drawing area that is adjacent to the current alignment.

The station and offset of the location is listed on the command line.

To list the alignments that are defined in the project

Steps		Use Search to locate
1	Define at least one alignment.	Defining Alignments
2	From the Alignments menu, choose Alignment Commands ➤ List Defined.	Listing the Alignments Defined in the Current
	The defined alignments are listed in the AutoCAD Text Window.	Project
3	To continue, press any key.	

Labeling Objects



Using the Labels Commands Labeling Objects Label Styles You can label the lines, curves, spirals, and polylines in drawings by using the Autodesk Land Desktop labeling commands. Each object can have more than one label. You can customize label styles to apply to the drawing objects, or you can use one of the predefined label styles included with Autodesk Land Desktop. You can include the information either along an object, at a point next to the object, or in a table.

Depending on your requirements, you can choose from three different labeling methods:

- **Dynamic labels**: Creates labels that update automatically.
- Static labels: Creates labels that never change as you move an object or modify a style.
- **Tag labels**: Tags each object with a tag label and places detailed information in a table.

All methods require you to select a label style, and then label the object.

Label Styles

To control the display of labels, and to specify the type of information that is labeled, you can set up label styles. For example, you can set up a label style which labels the distance and direction of a line and displays on top of the line. Whenever you modify a style that was used to create dynamic labels, the labels are updated to reflect the edited style.

Point label styles control the use of description keys for points, and they can also be formatted to label points with information that is located in external Microsoft[®] Access databases.

For more information about label styles see "Editing Label Styles" on page 219.

Accessing Labeling Commands

You can access the labeling commands in one of three ways:

- Select commands from the Labels pull-down menu.
- Use the Object shortcut menu.
- Use the Style Properties dialog bar.

The Labels menu, shown in the following illustration, provides access to numerous labeling commands, such as those for labeling lines, curves, spirals, and points.

Labels
<u>S</u> ettings
Edit Label Styles
Edit Tag Styles
Sho <u>w</u> Dialog Bar
Add Dynamic Labels
Update Selected Labels
Upda <u>t</u> e All Labels
Swap Label Te <u>x</u> t
Elip Direction
<u>D</u> elete Labels
Disass <u>o</u> ciate Labels
Add Stati <u>c</u> Labels
Label Li <u>n</u> e By Points
Label Curve By Points
Add Tag Labels
Add Ta <u>b</u> les 🕨 🕨
Edjt Tables 🔹 🕨
Label Nort <u>h</u> /East
Geodetic <u>L</u> abels
B <u>u</u> ilding Offset Label

Object Shortcut Menu

By using the Object shortcut menu, you can have quick access to the labeling commands. Select the objects that you want to label, right-click, and then select a labeling command from the shortcut menu.

<u>R</u> epeat LINE	
Cut Copy Copy with <u>B</u> ase Point <u>P</u> aste Paste as Bloc <u>k</u> Paste to Original Coor <u>d</u> inates	
Erase Move Copy Selection Scale Rotate	
Notes Object Viewer Entity Display	
Add Dynamic Label Add Tag Label Add Static Label Update Labels Flip Direction	Labeling commands on Object shortcut menu
Delete Labels Dis-Associate Labels	
Design Properties	
Deselect <u>A</u> ll	
Quick Select <u>F</u> ind Propertie <u>s</u>	



Using the Style Properties

Dialog Bar

Style Properties Dialog Bar

To choose the current label styles, you can use the Style Properties dialog bar to switch between tag and normal label styles, to change the label settings, and to edit label styles.



To display the Style Properties dialog bar, select Show Dialog Bar from the Labels menu. You can dock the dialog bar either on the top or bottom, but not to the side, of the graphics window.

TIP To move the dialog bar into either the menu or the command line areas, but to *not* dock it, hold down CTRL as you move the dialog bar.

Key Concepts

- You can label objects individually or as a group, and you can label any combination of lines, curves, spirals, and polylines simultaneously.
- Polylines use the current line label style for straight segments, and the current curve style for curved segments. Only lightweight polylines can be labeled.
- You can control label details, such as arrows, spacing, alternate units, and angle units, when you set up the label styles.
- To label alignments, contours, and parcels, use the labeling commands from the Alignments, Terrain, and Parcels menus.

Т	To label lines with dynamic labels		
Steps		Use Search to locate	
1	Draw some lines by using the LINE or PLINE command.	Draw Lines	
2	From the Labels menu, choose Show Dialog Bar to display the Style Properties dialog bar.	Using the Style Properties Dialog Bar	
3	Verify that the base icon is displayed. When this icon is displayed, the Current Label Style list shows only regular label styles. If the styles icon is displayed, the list of styles shows only tag label styles. You can click the tag icon to display the labels icon.	Selecting the Current Label Style from the Style Properties Dialog Bar	
4	Click the Line tab.		
5	Select a style from the list, such as Direction Above, Distance Below.		

To label lines with dynamic labels (continued)

Steps		Use Search to locate
6	Click 羄 to display the Label Settings dialog box.	
7	Click the General tab.	
8	Verify that the Update Labels When Style Changes and the Update Labels When Objects Change check boxes are selected.	Specifying How Labels Are Updated
	These check boxes control whether the labels are updated when you edit an object or label style.	
	The Update Labels When Objects Change check box must be selected if you want to create dynamic labels.	
9	Click OK to return to the drawing.	

10 Select the lines that you want to label.

11 Right-click, and then choose Add Dynamic Label from the Creating Dynamic Labels shortcut menu.

Labels are added, as shown in the following illustration.



12 If you click a grip on one of the lines and drag it to a new location, the labels are updated with the new distances and angles.

To laber lines with tag labels and create a table

Steps		Use Search to locate
1	Draw some lines by using the LINE or PLINE command.	Draw Lines
2	From the Labels menu, choose Show Dialog Bar to display the Style Properties dialog bar.	Using the Style Properties Dialog Bar
3	Verify that the sicon is displayed. When this icon is displayed, the Current Label Style list shows only tag label styles. If the size icon is displayed, then the list of styles shows only regular label styles. You can click the label icon to display the tag icon.	Selecting the Current Label Style from the Style Properties Dialog Bar
4	Click the Line tab.	
5	Select the Tag Number style.	
6	Select the lines that you want to label.	
7	Right-click, and then choose Add Tag Label from the shortcut menu.	
8	From the Labels menu, choose Add Tables ➤ Line Table to display the Line Table Definition dialog box.	Creating a Line Table
	By default, the Column Definitions are set up to place line number, line length, and bearing in the table.	Changing the Column Definitions of a Line Table
9	Click OK to create the table.	
10	Select an insertion point for the table. This is the upper- left corner of the table.	

The table is placed in the drawing.

Editing Label Styles

Autodesk Land Desktop includes several different default label styles. You can edit these styles if needed, and you can create new styles.

A label style controls the appearance of the label text, such as the style, label offset, text layer, and text justification.

A label style also controls what pieces of information the label contains, such as direction and distance. These are called data elements.

teps		Use Search to locate
l	rom the Labels menu, choose Edit Label Styles he Edit Label Styles dialog box.	to display Label Styles
,	Click the Line Label Styles tab.	Editing Line Label Styles
[Edit Label Styles	×
	Name: direction above, distance below Data: Length Direction Start Nothing Start Nothing Start Easting >> Text <u>Below</u> Text Above {Direction} Text Below Text Below	
	Image: Construction of the second	arrow ick icw's Feet

Т	To edit a line label style (continued)			
St	eps	Use Search to locate		
3	From the Name list, choose the name of the Label Style that you want to edit.			
4	When you select a style, the Text Above and Text Below sections of the dialog box display the selected data elements. The Preview area on the right shows you a preview image of this label.			
	If you want to modify any elements of the selected style, then you can type modifications in the Text Above and Text Below text boxes, or delete existing text in these boxes. You can also select different data elements to place in the label.			
5	To add an arrow, tick marks, or crows feet to the objects you are labeling, select the appropriate check boxes.			
6	Under Text Properties, select a text style, specify an offset, select a layer, and specify the justification method for the label.			
7	Click Save to save the label.			
8	Click OK.			

Importing and Exporting Data in LandXML Format

When you use the Import LandXML and Export LandXML commands, you can export and import points, surfaces, parcels, and alignments in LandXML format using the LandXML schema. If you have Autodesk Civil Design installed, you can export profile and cross section data and import profile data.



In this chapter

- Using the LandXML Import and Export commands
- Exporting data in LandXML format
- Importing LandXML data

Using the LandXML Import and Export Commands

LandXML is a data exchange standard for managing data, such as points, alignment geometry, and other information. It is based on the Extensible Markup Language (*XML*), a global standard for exchanging data via the Internet.

You can use the Import LandXML and Export LandXML commands to export and import point, surface, alignment, and parcel data in LandXML format.

By transforming project data to LandXML format, you can do the following:

- Exchange data. For example, you can import LandXML data into other software applications that support imported XML. The data can then be modified and delivered to customers and agencies in the required formats.
- Transfer and archive data. For example, you can transfer data to another Autodesk Land Desktop project, or archive project data in a non-proprietary format.
- **Create custom reports.** For example, you can transform the data into custom reports by applying XSL style sheets. See the *www.landxml.org* website for examples.
- **Convert units**. For example, you can export data from an imperial project, and then import it into a metric project to scale and convert values.
- Translate and rotate coordinates. For example, you can use the Import LandXML and Export LandXML commands to globally adjust the elevations of project data.
- Identify project data that has changed. For example, if you change a project after exporting it, you can use the LandXML Import command (without actually importing data) to compare the current project to the exported LandXML file. Any differences between the project data are listed in the LandXML Import Comparison Results dialog box.

The Import LandXML and Export LandXML commands are based on the LandXML schema. For more information about the LandXML schema, go to *www.landxml.org*.

Exporting Data in LandXML Format

Using the LandXML Export command, you can export the following LandXML data from an Autodesk Land Desktop project:

- COGO points
- Point groups
- Description keys
- Surfaces
- Parcels
- Alignments
- Profiles
- Cross sections

The following illustration shows the LandXML Export dialog box, which you can access by choosing Export LandXML from the Projects menu. Use the options in this dialog box to select the data to export and to specify Export Options and Point Reference settings.

Data Selection: Point References: Image: Points 1742 of 1742 points 0 of 4 point groups Parcels 0 description keys Alignments Image: Point References: Adganced Image: Point References: Adganced	LandXML Export				
Image: Parcels 1742 of 1742 points Image: Parcels 0 of 4 point groups 0 description keys Image: Parcels Image: Operative structure 4 of 4 surfaces. Alignments Image: Vertical structure • without watersheds Image: Advanced Image: Parcels 1 of 1 parcels Export Options:	— Data Selection: ———				
Image: Surfaces 4 of 4 surfaces. • without watersheds Advanced Image: Advanced 1 of 1 parcels	Points				
Parcels 1 of 1 parcels Export Options:	☑ <u>S</u> urfaces				
	Parcels				
Alignments 12 of 12 alignments • without profiles	Alignments				
Export Close Help					

Key Concepts

- When you select the points to export, you can also choose to export the point groups and description key definitions.
- When you select the surfaces to export, you can also choose to export the watershed definitions.
- When you select the alignments to export, you can also choose to export profiles and cross sections if Autodesk Civil Design is installed.

- Use the Export Data Options to control the data precision and the imperial unit foot type. When working with imperial units, you can specify that feet are treated as U.S. Survey feet or International feet. An International foot is 1.000002 times the size of a U.S. Survey foot.
- Use the Export File Options to control the level of detail contained in the exported file. For more information, see "Outputting Minimal or Detailed Data" on page 224.
- You can export point references for alignments and parcels. Point references substitute references to COGO points instead of using coordinates for the geometric points on an alignment or parcel. For more information, see "Exporting Point References" on page 225.

Outputting Minimal or Detailed Data

One of the options you can control by using the LandXML Export File Options is whether the exported data is minimal or detailed. To access the LandXML Export File Options dialog box, shown in the following illustration, click the File button in the LandXML Export dialog box.

LandXML Export File Optio	ins .	×
Schema Location:		1
C Local Path		Browse
XML File Location:		
Project Path		
C Eixed Path		Browse
Apply XSL Stylesheet:		
☐ S <u>t</u> ylesheet		Browse
File Options:		
Minimum Output	Include Identification Read Only	
C Detailed Output	Identification	
	Save as Default Beset to Default	
	<u>QK</u> <u>Cancel</u> <u>H</u> elp	

To output the minimum amount of data required to recreate the project data when importing the file, select the Minimum Output option under File Options.

Use this option when you intend to transfer the data to another Autodesk Land Desktop project or to another software program. When imported into another Autodesk Land Desktop project, the additional information created with the Detailed Output option is not used by the LandXML Import command.

• To output all supported elements and attributes for the selected data types, select the Detailed Output option.

Select this option if you intend to create a formatted report of the data, or if you intend to use the data in a program that is not capable of calculating the information.

TIP If you want to use the data for a report, you can apply a style sheet to the data. To do this, select the Apply XSL Stylesheet check box in the LandXML Export File Options dialog box and specify a style sheet to use.

Exporting Point References

A point reference substitutes a known northing/easting coordinate of a line, curve, or spiral for a COGO point (CgPoint element) that is within a specified tolerance distance.

You can export point references for the geometric coordinates of parcels and alignments. To use point references, select the Parcels or Alignments check boxes under Point References in the LandXML Export dialog box. Click the Advanced button to specify the tolerance value and to specify the points to use as references. You can also select the Export COGO Point References Only check box to export only those points that are used as point references.

NOTE You must export the COGO points that are used as point references in order to export the point reference data.

When you choose to export point references, the LandXML Export command creates COGO point references, where possible, for the parcel and alignment geometry. This means that if the geometry of parcels and alignments in the project match COGO point coordinates within a specified tolerance, the parcel and alignment coordinates are output in the LandXML file as references to those COGO points. For example, in LandXML a parcel line element definition could appear as follows:

```
<Line>
<Start>5832.87775298 3944.16966215</Start>
<End>5632.87775298 3944.16966215</End>
</Line>
```

If you choose to create the COGO point references the definition would appear as follows:

```
<Line>
<Start pntRef="250" />
<End pntRef="256" />
</Line>
```

This shows the line connecting points 250 to 256. It is also valid for a coordinate geometry element to have a mix of pntRef and coordinate values as shown in the following example.

```
<Line>
<Start pntRef="250" />
<End>5632.87775298 3944.16966215</End>
</Line>
```

This situation could occur for the endpoint if a COGO point is not within the specified tolerance.

Т	To export data in LandXML format			
St	eps	Use Search to locate		
1	From the Projects menu, choose Export LandXML to display the LandXML Export dialog box.	Exporting LandXML Data from Autodesk Land Desktop		
2	Select the data to export by using the Points, Surfaces, Parcels, and Alignments buttons.	Selecting the Point Data to Export		
	NOTE To export the specified data, the check boxes next to the Points, Surfaces, Parcels, and Alignments buttons must be selected.	Selecting the Surface Data to Export		
		Selecting the Parcel Data to Export		
		Selecting the Alignment Data to Export		
3	To export point references for parcel and alignment geometry, select the Parcels and Alignments check boxes under Point References, and then click Advanced to set the tolerance value.	Changing the Point Reference Options		

To export data in LandXML format (continued)

Steps		Use Search to locate
4	To set the data precision and foot type (for imperial projects only), click Data under Export Options.	Changing the LandXML Export Data Options
5	To specify the location and detail of the exported file, the default schema location, and to select an XSL style sheet to apply to the data, click File under Export Options.	Changing LandXML Export File Options
	NOTE The \Land Desktop 3\Data\LandXML Stylesheets folder contains four basic XSL stylesheets which you can use as a basis for creating your own XSL stylesheets.	
6	Click Export, specify a file name, and click Save to export the data.	
	As the data is exported, the export progress is indicated on status bar at the bottom of the LandXML Export dialog box.	

Importing LandXML Data

Use the LandXML Import command to import the following data into the current Autodesk Land Desktop project:

- COGO points
- Point groups
- Description keys
- Surfaces
- Parcels
- Alignments
- Profiles

NOTE The LandXML Import command does not support cross sections.

Importing LandXML data into Autodesk Land Desktop is a two-step process.

- First, select the file to import and select options that prepare the data to be imported.
- After the data is processed, you can select the specific items in the file to import.

The following illustration shows the LandXML Import dialog box, which you can access by choosing Import LandXML from the Projects menu.

LandXML Import	x
File Selection:	
Name: Tutorial2.xml	Details Browse
File Contents:	
COGO Points: 489	✓ Surfaces: 1
Point <u>G</u> roups: 2	Parcels: 3
Desc Keys: 85	Alignments: 10
Data Processing	Options:
Translate/Rotate	<u>F</u> ile
Select Region Boundary	
Apply Last Used Filters	Da <u>t</u> a
<u>0</u> K	<u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

Use the options in this dialog box to do the following:

- Select the data types to import, such as points or alignments, by selecting the check boxes under File Contents. (You refine the data selection in a subsequent step).
- Select the Translate/Rotate check box to specify translation and rotation values for the imported data.
- Select the Select Region Boundary check box to limit the import to a selected region of the project.
- Use Data Options to control the data imported into the current drawing, such as
 - Whether existing profile data is overwritten or whether data is merged.
 - Whether surfaces are imported with breakline data (which maintains original surface triangulation) or point data only (which is a quicker method).
 - Whether the foot type is U.S. Survey or International for imperial drawings.

Some of the options in this dialog box affect whether other dialog boxes are displayed during the data import process after you click OK.

For example, if you select the Translate/Rotate check box, then the LandXML Translate/Rotate dialog box is displayed, as shown in the following illustration.

LandXML Import Translate/Rotate 🛛 🔀				
Base Point: (meter)				
Northing: 0.0000				
Easting: 0.0000 COGO Point				
Ele <u>v</u> ation: 0.00				
Translated Coordinate: (meter)				
Northing: 0.0000				
Easting: 0.0000				
Elevation: 0.00				
Rotation Angle: (deg-min-sec)				
0 0 0 "				
C Clockwise C Counter-Clockwise				
<u>D</u> K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp				

Use this dialog box to specify a base point and translated point as well as a rotation angle for the data.

If you select the Select Region Boundary check box, then LandXML Import Region Selection dialog box is displayed, as shown in the following illustration.

LandXML Import Region Selection		
Region Type:	Selection Method:	
C Polyline	C Crossing	
Trim Surfaces with the	Region boundary	
<u>D</u> K <u>Cancel</u> <u>H</u> elp		

Use this dialog box to specify a region type and selection method. When you click OK, you are prompted to select the region from the drawing. The import of data into the project is then limited to the coordinates of this region.

If the LandXML file you are importing has different units than the current drawing, the LandXML Import Unit Conversion dialog box is displayed, as shown in the following illustration.

LandXML Import Unit Conversion	×
Unit Conversion	
XML File Unit: meter	
Drawing Unit: foot	
Conversion Eactor: 3.280839895	
<u> </u>	,

The Conversion Value box is filled in automatically with a standard conversion factor.

Import Results and Import Selection

After you have gone through the steps of specifying the data types to import and specifying the various import options, the data is summarized in the LandXML Import Comparison Results dialog box, as shown in the following illustration.

Land	XML Import Comparison Result	ts	×
	COGO Points: LandXML File Total: Removed by Region Selection: Identical: Different (Locked): Different: New: Available for Import:	489 0 0 459 30 489	<u> </u>
	Point Groups: LandXML File Total: Identical: Different: New: Available for Import:	2 0 0 2 2	
	Description Keys: LandXML File Total:	85	•
	<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel	Help	

Click OK to display the LandXML Import Selection dialog box, shown in the following illustration, which you can use to refine the selection of data to import.

LandXML Import Selec	tion	×
File: Name: Tutorial2.x	ml	Details
Filter Data:		Processing:
COGO Points	489	<u>R</u> esults
Point <u>G</u> roups	2	
Desc <u>K</u> eys	85	Conflict Resolution:
<u>S</u> urfaces	1	Prompt
Parcels	3	C O⊻erwrite
<u>Alignments</u>	10	C S <u>k</u> ip
	rt <u>C</u> ancel	

Use the options in this dialog box to select the points, point groups, description keys, surfaces, parcels, and alignments to import, and then click Import to import the data into the current project.

Key Concepts

- You can specify the data to import in two phases.
 - First, in the LandXML Import dialog box, specify the general data types to import, such as points.
 - Then, in the LandXML Import Selection dialog box, use the options to specify exactly the points (or other data) to import.
- By using the LandXML Import Region Selection dialog box, you can limit the import of data to a specified region in the project. Use a polyline or a window selection to specify coordinates in the current drawing.
- To import profiles, Autodesk Civil Design must be installed on your system.

To import LandXML data

Steps		Use Search to locate
1	From the Projects menu, choose Import LandXML to display the LandXML Import Select File dialog box.	Importing LandXML Data into Autodesk Land Desktop
2	Select the LandXML file to import and click Open to display the LandXML Import dialog box.	
3	Under File Contents, select the check boxes for the data types you want to import. If the file does not contain a data type, then that check box is unavailable for selection.	
4	Under Data Processing, select the Translate/Rotate check box to translate or rotate the values in the LandXML file. Select the Select Region Boundary check box to limit the import to a specified region in the project.	
5	Under Options, click Data to specify the data to be imported into the drawing, and how surface and profile data are imported.	Changing the LandXML Data Options
6	Click OK to close the LandXML Import Data Options dialog box, and then click OK again to continue.	
7	Depending on the options you selected and depending on the file units, the following dialog boxes may be displayed:	Converting Units When Importing LandXML Data
	 LandXML Import Unit Conversion LandXML Import Translate/Rotate LandXML Import Region Selection 	Translating and Rotating LandXML Data
		Importing LandXML Data Within a Region
8	Finally, the LandXML Import Comparison Results dialog box is displayed, which shows you the data in the file that is new or different compared to the current project. Click OK to continue.	LandXML Import Comparison Results
9	In the LandXML Import Selection dialog box, specify the points, point groups, description keys, surfaces, parcels, and alignments to import, and then click Import to import the data.	Selecting LandXML Data to Import

Glossary

2D polyline A polyline with all vertices at the same elevation.

3D face A 3D face is an AutoCAD object that represents the surface of a 3- or 4-sided area, with each vertex potentially at a different elevation. You can view TINs (Triangulated Irregular Networks) as 3D faces. Using the SHADE command, you can shade 3D faces. Using the RENDER command, you can render the 3D faces.

3D grid The 3D grid command projects the vertices of a 2D, regularly spaced, square or rectangular grid onto a TIN surface. The calculated elevations of the projected vertices are then used to build 3D faces. The smaller the grid, the more detailed the representation of the surface becomes.

3D polyline A polyline with vertices at varying elevations.

3D skirts Vertical 3D faces from the border of the surface to the base elevation.

A value (spirals) The spiral parameter A equals the square root of the product of the spiral length and the radius. This parameter measures the flatness of a spiral.

acre A measure of land: 160 square rods; 4,840 square yards; 43,560 square feet in a closed shape of any form.

alternate units A second dimension using another standard of measure. These labels are usually placed after the dimension in square brackets ([]). A common use of alternate units is to label a line's distance in feet with alternate units of meters.

angle The difference in direction between two convergent lines. In surveying, the angle is on a horizontal or vertical plane.

Angles are measured in several different ways. The major differences between them are the units of angular measurement and how they are referenced. The main units used are the degree, radian, and grad. Degrees are the result of dividing a complete circle into 360 equal parts. Grads are the result of dividing a complete circle into 400 equal parts. A radian is the angle subtended by an arc with a length equal to the radius of the circle.

The two major angular references that are used in Autodesk Land Desktop are the *azimuth* and *bearing*.

An azimuth angle is referenced from North, and is always measured clockwise. South of the equator, however, azimuth angles are not referenced to due north, but to due south.

A bearing angle is measured from either due north or south, with an east or west reference angle. For example, the notation N45°45'58" E means that this angle was referenced from due north and was turned 45 degrees, 45 minutes, and 58 seconds toward the east. Bearing angles can never exceed 90 degrees (PI/2 radians or 100 grads). In addition, bearings are usually referenced by quadrant number. A quadrant is any of the sections resulting from dividing a circle into four equal parts. Quadrant one is considered to be the NE corner, and quadrants 2, 3, and 4 proceed clockwise.

Also, in AutoCAD, all lines have an angle in the X,Y plane, with 0 degrees typically to the right, or 3:00 on the dial, and all angles measured counter-clockwise.

arc A part of a mathematically defined circular curve.

area The quantity of plane space in a horizontal plane enclosed by the boundary of any polygonal figure.

assumed coordinates A set of coordinates assigned to a point that are not the actual point coordinates. All points are set relative to these coordinates. For example, the coordinates N5000, E5000 can be assigned to the beginning point of a traverse. Later, if the actual coordinates were found to be N4578.99, E20987.66, you can adjust the points relative to the actual coordinates.

assumed elevation An elevation assigned to a base point that is not the actual point elevation. All other points are set relative to this elevation. For example, an elevation of 200 may be assigned to the beginning point of a traverse. Later, if the actual elevation was found to be 405.67, you can re-assign elevations relative to the actual, not the assumed, elevation.

AutoCAD login name When you install Autodesk Land Desktop, an AutoCAD login name is generated for you. This login name is based on your Windows login name, and is used by the program to manage the lock files for a project.

average end area A type of Section volume. The most common method of calculating volumes. The average of adjacent cross section areas is multiplied by the distance between them. For drawings that use feet as units, the volume is reported in cubic yards; for drawings that use meters as units, the volume is reported in cubic meters.

The following formula is used when you select the average end area volume calculation method:

$$S = \frac{h}{2}(A1+A2)$$

Variable	Value
S	volume
h	distance between sections
A1	area of section 1
A2	area of section 2

average method (Surface Display) You can use the Average method to create surface views that show the elevation or slope ranges of a surface. The average method uses a centroid-averaging calculation to determine which surface triangles belong in which range. This may result in ranges that appear "saw-toothed." *See also* banding method (Surface Display).

azimuth A clockwise angle measured from a reference meridian. Also known as north azimuth. It can range from 0 to 360 degrees. A negative azimuth is converted to a clockwise value. *See also* south azimuth.

banding method (Surface Display) You can use the Banding method to create surface views that show the elevation or slope ranges of a surface. The Banding method splits surface triangles based on elevation ranges to create smooth bands. *See also* average method (Surface Display)

base elevation A reference plane for 3D skirts and the vertical factor for a surface. 3D skirts use the base elevation to determine the elevation at the bottom of the 3D skirts. If you apply a vertical factor for scaling a 3D view of a surface, then the surface is scaled vertically from the base elevation.

base point The point of coordinate control for the Autodesk Land Desktop coordinate system. This is the point on the Northing/Easting grid that is assigned to a point on the AutoCAD World Coordinate System X, Y grid. The base point setting is specific to each individual drawing, and typically starts with North = 0, East = 0, set on AutoCAD's X = 0, Y = 0.

You can use the base point setting to assign any northing/easting coordinate to any X, Y coordinate, effectively moving (but not rotating) the northing/easting grid over the X, Y grid. The northing/easting coordinates of the points in the database are unchanged by a base point manipulation. This feature is sometimes used when working with a dataset with high coordinates to move the area of the northing/easting grid closer to AutoCAD's 0,0.

bearing An angle measured from North or South, whichever is nearest, with the added designation of East or West. The angle is always less than 90 degrees (PI/2 radians or 100 grads) and is usually referenced by quadrant number. For example, the notation N45°45'58" E means this angle was referenced from due North and was turned 45 degrees, 45 minutes, and 58 seconds toward the East (in the first quadrant).

boundary (surface) A closed 2D or 3D polyline that limits the triangulation of the digital terrain model by not allowing TIN lines to cross it. Most common are outer surface boundaries constructed just outside the extremities of the dataset, eliminating unwanted interpolations across empty space where the surface has a concave shape. You can also use two types of internal surface boundaries: *hide* boundaries, to punch

holes in a surface, (for example, a building footprint), or *show* boundaries, to create smaller surfaces by eliminating areas that fall outside the boundary.

breakline A breakline is used to connect the data representing a distinct surface feature, like a ridge line, edge of pavement, toe of a slope, centerline of a road, or flowline of a ditch or stream. When a breakline is defined, the surface triangulation must follow the breaklines first, by placing triangle edges coincident with the breakline segments. This ensures the feature in the model is accurately depicted. The rest of the interpolation is then performed based on proximity. Breaklines are typically critical to creating an accurate surface model, because it is the interpolation of the data, not just the data itself, that determines the shape of the model.

breakline points A breakline point is a point of surface data included in the defined breakline's list of vertices.

bulge For contours that contain curves, the bulge value is a maximum mid-ordinate distance along a polyline curve. If the mid-ordinate distance is longer than specified, then points are added to better define the shape of the curve.

Polyline curves are not actually curves; they are small, straight segments that mimic the appearance of a curve. The bulge factor can add more vertices to a polyline curve, making it appear more curve-like. The smaller the value, the more vertices are added.

Used when creating contour data for a surface; not for creating contours.

catchment area The area tributary to a lake, stream, or drainage system.

centerline (CL) The center line of an alignment. Road lanes are created by offsetting the centerline a specified distance. When designing roadway templates, the centerline is usually the finished ground reference point.

chord A straight line connecting two points on a curve: the Point of Curvature (PC) and Point of Tangency (PT). The curve joins with a line or another curve at these points.

COGO Short for Coordinate Geometry.

COGO point object The point objects that you create using the Points menu commands (and other Autodesk Land Desktop commands that create points) can have several pieces of information associated with them. The point object has a point node and a point number, northing and easting values, elevation, description, and optional name. The point data is stored in an external point database, and all elements of a point object are inserted on the same drawing layer unless description keys are used.

composite surface volumes The composite volume method creates a surface that represents the depth of cut and fill over the site. You can use any of the Terrain commands that generates information based on a surface with the composite surface. For example, you can create contours or points based on depth of cut and fill.

When you calculate the volumes using this method, the surface is re-triangulated based on points from both surfaces. This method uses the points from both surfaces, as well as any location where the triangle edges between the two surfaces cross. It then calculates the new composite surface elevations based on the difference between the elevations of the two surfaces.

compound curve A curve consisting of two or more arcs of different radii curving in the same direction, which have a common tangent or transition curve at their point of junction.

compound spiral A spiral that provides a transition between two circular curves of different radii.

contour An imaginary line that connects points of the same elevation or value relative to a specified reference datum.

contour data Contours are one of the major categories of data (others are points, breaklines, boundaries, and DEM files), that you can use to build a surface. Contour data is unique inasmuch as it is the only data type that weeding and supplementing factors are applied to. The Create As Contour Data check box in the Contour Weeding dialog box actually determines whether the contours are defined as point data (unchecked), or breakline data (checked).

coordinate transformation Also known as geodetic transformation. A coordinate transformation converts values established in one coordinate system and translates them to another.

coordinates By its mathematical definition, a point is a geometric entity with no length. To specify exactly where that point is in space, you must specify its location in three different coordinate planes: *X*, *Y*, and *Z*; or Northing, Easting, and Elevation.

cross section Section views taken at a 90-degree angle to the alignment.

curve correction In volume calculations, the length between the end areas on horizontal curves is taken from the length along the centerline curve. With curve correction, the length is taken from the path of the area's average centroid for a more accurate result.

curve to spiral (CS) A point where a curve meets a spiral is labeled as a CS.

datum A reference value. All elevations or coordinates are set relative to this value. In surveying, two datums (horizontal and vertical) are generally used.

For global coordinate systems, a datum refers to the ellipsoid information and the techniques used to determine positions on the Earth's surface. An ellipsoid is part of a datum definition.

decimal degree One of the five choices for degree units, decimal degrees express the minutes and seconds of an angle as its decimal equivalent. For example, 3°30'36" equals 3.51 decimal degrees.

In contrast, when using the DD.MMSS convention, in which the numbers after the decimal are read as minutes and seconds, not decimal degrees, 3°30'36" is entered as 3.3036, not 3.51. Care must given not to confuse the two methods, as they clearly yield very different results. *See also* degrees, minutes, seconds.

deflection angle A horizontal angle measured from an extension of the preceding line, right or left.

degrees, **minutes**, **seconds** A representation of an angle in degrees, minutes, and seconds in which a full circle contains 360 degrees, each degree 60 minutes, and each minute 60 seconds. A typical bearing in DMS measurement looks like: N45°45'58"E. Using this format, 3°30'36" is entered as 3.3036.

DEM Digital Elevation Model (DEM) consists of an array of elevations taken on a regularly spaced horizontal grid. You can get USGS (United States Geological Survey) topographic data in this form.

description keys When new point data is created in the point database, regardless of the method you use, the descriptions that you enter can be checked against a user-defined list of description keys. These consist of case-sensitive, literal character strings, with or without wildcards. Depending on how you set up the description keys, if a match is found, then:

- The current description can be replaced with an alternate description.
- The COGO point in the drawing that represents the record in the point database can be assigned to a specific layer.
- A symbol can be placed at the node of the point.
- The symbol can be assigned to a specific layer.

Using description keys to translate descriptions can help standardize point data if a variety of data sources are used. For example, descriptions of EROAD, EPAVE, ERD, and EDGEROAD can all be changed to EOP. The other layer and symbol options can greatly enhance automatic base plan generation and the overall organization of the drawing file.

digitize To digitize a paper drawing is to convert it into AutoCAD vector objects. Digitizing has traditionally been done by taping a paper drawing onto a digitizing tablet and tracing over it using AutoCAD commands.

Alternately, you can trace bitmap files that are inserted in the drawing. Tracing bitmaps onscreen with AutoCAD commands is referred to as *heads-up* digitizing.

Whatever the method used, the end result is AutoCAD objects that you can place on layers, edit, and use as a data source for design work.

distance A length between two points. It can be expressed as either feet or meters, and can be a horizontal or slope distance. In some functions, a negative distance reverses direction.

drawing settings Drawing settings control many different command parameters in Autodesk Land Desktop. Each drawing in a project can have its own drawing settings. Drawing settings are broken down by feature. For example, there are drawing settings for points, terrain, and so on.

drawing template A drawing file with pre-established settings for new drawings and has the extension *.dwt*. Templates store layers, text styles, line types, dimension styles, and AutoCAD variables like Aperture. They can also store blocks, such as a border or a company logo.

A template also stores drawing setup values. For example, if you use the Drawing Setup Wizard or the Drawing Setup command to set up a drawing, and then save that drawing as a *.dwt* file, then the next time you create a new drawing based on the drawing template, all of the drawing setup values will be loaded.

dynamic labels Dynamic labels are labels that can change position, content, or style after you create them. Dynamic labels have the ability to auto-update whenever you edit the object the label is associated with, or whenever you edit the style of the label. You can turn off auto-updating options, and use commands to update the labels if desired. Or, you can convert the dynamic labels to static labels if you never want them to be updated. *See also* static labels.

E value (superelevation) The maximum allowable superelevation rate in either ft/ft or m/m. An E value of 0.10 equals a 10 percent grade.

easting A linear distance eastwards from the North-South line which passes through the origin of a grid. Equivalent to the *X* coordinate in an *X*, *Y*, *Z* coordinate system.

edit history When you edit a surface, your edits are recorded in an edit history which you can play back when you rebuild the surface. When the surface is rebuilt, the same edits are made in the order you made them.

elevation The vertical distance from a datum to a point or object on the Earth's surface. The datum is generally considered to be at sea level.

elevation banding The process of dividing a surface into user-defined elevation ranges and creating 2D solids or 3D faces on separate layers to represent the part of the surface that falls within each range.

end conditions Refers to the symbol at the end of lines or other objects. End condition symbols can be arrows, crows feet, and so on.

entity Synonymous with object. Any vector object that appears in the drawing.

equations (stationing) Station equations are used to define points on an alignment where stationing is discontinuous.

existing ground An undeveloped terrain as it currently exists.

face A three-dimensional surface triangle. A face is represented by either a 3D face object or 3D line objects.

facet The planar face of a grid cell. Each grid cell has one, two, or four facets.

finished ground A digital terrain model of a proposed final design, and the representation of that surface as linework on a profile or section. The proposed or actual terrain model of a developed terrain.

foot Unit of linear measurement. An international foot is based on the conversion 1 in. = 2.54 cm. while a US survey foot is based on 39.37 in. = 1 meter.

full description The description of a point after any point description key substitution has occurred. *See also* raw description.

geodesic On a surface, the shortest line between two points. The line or curve from one point along an ellipsoid to another.

geodesy The science that determines the Earth's size and shape and the exact positions of points on its surface.

geodetic Signifies a basic relationship to the Earth that takes into account the curvature of the Earth's sea level surface. For example, a geodetic distance is a distance or angle in which the Earth's curvature is taken into account, versus a distance or angle measured on a flat paper map.

geodetic transformation Also known as coordinate transformation. Converts values established in one coordinate system and translates them to a different coordinate system.

global coordinate system Describes how the Earth's sphere is projected onto a sheet of paper and converted to the Cartesian coordinate system. A global coordinate system can differ based on the projection type, datum, and units that are used. For example, a global coordinate system can be based on the Lambert Conformal Conic projection, the North American Datum of 1983, and metric units.

grade The slope of a surface, with the vertical rise or fall expressed as a percentage of the horizontal distance.

grads A system of measure in which one grad equals 1/100 of a 90° angle, or 360° = 400 grads.

grid A system of lines parallel to a given set of axes at a specific spacing. Grids are used in Autodesk Land Desktop to visualize surfaces and calculate volumes. A grid is also used for geodetic purposes.

grid azimuth At the point of observation, the angle in the projection's plane measured between the central meridian of the plane coordinate projection system and a line containing the object sighted.

grid distance The distance between two points based on a coordinate zone, not on local northing and easting coordinates.

grid easting The easting coordinate based on a selected coordinate zone, versus the local easting, which is based on the surveyor's base point.

grid m size The dimension of the grid cell in the M direction (equivalent to the drawing's *X*-axis if grid rotation angle is 0).

grid n size The dimension of the grid cell in the N direction (equivalent to the drawing's *Y*-axis (if the grid rotation angle is 0).

grid northing The northing coordinate based on a selected coordinate zone, versus the local northing, which is based on the surveyor's base point.

grid surface volumes The grid method of volume calculation measures the difference in elevation between two surfaces at each intersection in a user-defined grid. If only one surface exists at a grid intersection, then that point is not used in the volume calculation. Surface 2 in the defined stratum is always compared to surface 1. If surface 2 is lower than surface 1, then it is a cut condition, and if surface 2 is higher than surface 1, then it is a fill condition.

The difference in elevation between the surfaces at all the usable grid intersections is then used as the *Z* value for a new grid surface data point. For example, a grid point with a fill condition of 2.39 generates a surface data point with an elevation of 2.3, a grid point with a cut condition of 1.79 generates a surface data point with an elevation of -1.7. Autodesk Land Desktop then builds a grid volume surface, and compares it to a flat plane surface at elevation 0 to determine the cut and fill volumes.

grid tick A mark made at each sampled location in a volume grid. The ticks are placed on two different layers, depending on if they represent a cut condition or a fill condition, and are typically accompanied by labels showing the amount of cut or fill, similarly placed on separate layers. You can then use the ticks and labels to generate a color-coded graphic depicting the areas and amounts of cut and fill earthwork.

hectare A measure of area, generally relating to land, of 10,000 square meters or approximately 2.47 acres.

horizontal alignment A series of 2D coordinates (northings and eastings), connected by lines, circular curves, and/or spiral curves, that Autodesk Land Desktop stores as an external data file. This defined alignment, in conjunction with a surface, can produce the station, offset, and elevation data needed to generate profiles and/or cross-sections. You can station the horizontal alignment and create parallel offsets to represent features such as edges of pavement, sidewalks, or rights-of-way.

horizontal scale In the drawing setup, the horizontal scale controls the size of annotation placed in the drawing, including text, scaled blocks, and special lines. It does not affect the line lengths or point coordinates because they are always defined in real world coordinates, not to any scale. Neither does it affect the design data in the drawing or project files.

If you change the horizontal scale in the middle of a drawing session, then any annotation added subsequently is scaled accordingly.

interpolate The process of calculating the elevation of any point on an infinite imaginary line that passes through two known horizontal and vertical control points.

intersection The point where two or more lines, arcs, figures, or objects join or cross in two- or three-dimensional space.

least squares A method of balancing a traverse in which the squares of the differences between the unadjusted and adjusted measurements (angles and distances) are summed and reduced to a minimum. This method uses the error specifications in the current equipment settings to determine the expected source of errors, and weights the individual measurements accordingly.

lightweight polyline Optimized polyline first introduced in AutoCAD 14. These polylines list as "LWPOLYLINE" when you use the LIST command.

local easting The easting coordinate based on the surveyor's assumed horizontal base point, versus the grid easting, which is based on the global coordinate zone.

local elevation The elevation coordinate based on the surveyor's assumed vertical base point, or benchmark, versus a real world elevation value.

local northing The northing coordinate based on the surveyor's assumed horizontal base point, versus the grid northing, which is based on the global coordinate zone.

m direction The *M* and *N* directions are used for defining grids in Autodesk Land Desktop, due to the fact that a grid rotation angle can cause the grid axes to be different from either the *X*-*Y* axes or the Northing/Easting axes in the current drawing. The m direction is roughly equivalent to the *X* direction.

meter The basic metric measurement of length. In comparison to the international foot 1 in. = 2.54 cm.

middle ordinate On a circular arc, the distance from the midpoint of the chord to the midpoint of the subtended arc.

minimize flat faces Minimizing the flat faces of contours helps to ensure that triangulation does not occur from one point on a contour to another point on the same contour, creating flat ridges. A typical example is on a site that includes finger-like contours such as you might find along a stream. Minimizing flat contours prevents the surface model from triangulating between a contour on one side of the stream and a contour on the other side of the stream.

n direction The *M* and *N* directions are used for defining grids in Autodesk Land Desktop, due to the fact that a grid rotation angle can cause the grid axes to be different from either the *X*-*Y* axes or the Northing/Easting axes in the current drawing. The N direction is roughly equivalent to the *Y* direction.

NAD 27 zone North American Datum of 1927. A datum acts as a reference point, line, or surface for mapping. In general, NAD 27 uses feet as its unit of measurement.

NAD 83 zone North American Datum of 1983. A datum acts as a reference point, line, or surface for mapping. In general, NAD 83 uses meters as its unit of measurement.

non-destructive breakline Triangulation lines in a TIN do not cross a non-destructive breakline. Instead, new vertices are added to the breakline at the intersection of each TIN line and the breakline. The new points create additional surface triangles. This is useful when you do not want the elevation of a surface to be interpolated inside an area that you know to be a constant elevation.

north rotation Means of specifying a north rotation or direction in AutoCAD drawing files. Bearings and azimuths are referenced from the drawing's north rotation.

object Any 2D or 3D vector figure that is displayed graphically in the drawing. This includes contours, points, lines, arcs, polylines, and so on.

offset distance A perpendicular distance from an object or point to a reference line or arc.

offset A distance measured, usually at a right angle from an established line, that is used to locate a new position. A positive number indicates a right offset, a negative number indicates a left offset.

offsets Can represent such things as edges of pavement, sidewalk lines, and shoulder lines for a road. You create these as either symmetric or asymmetric offsets from the alignment.

parcel A discrete piece of land. For example, a subdivision is comprised of numerous parcels. Synonymous with lot.

point database Autodesk Land Desktop uses a project point database to store the point information for a project. This file is named *points.mdb* and is stored in the project's *cogo* folder (for example, *c*:*Land Projects* 3*<project name>\cogo*). Autodesk Land Desktop prompts you to set up this point database whenever you start a new project.

point filters Key combinations that you can use to select COGO point objects in specific ways.

- Type **.g** (dot g) to select a point by clicking on it.
- Type .p (dot p) to select a point by typing the point number.
- Type .n (dot n) to select a point by typing its northing and easting coordinates.

A point filter remains active until you turn it off by entering either the point filter again or another point filter.

point group Point groups are used to group the points in the project into smaller, more manageable units. You can use point groups for selecting points you want to edit, or for specifying which points to use in a surface. For example, you can create a point group that contains all of the points in a project or only those points that represent existing ground elevations.

Point groups are a collection of point numbers. When you use a point group, the point data is pulled from the point database for each point number in the group.

The point group definitions are stored in *c*:*Land Projects 3*\<*project name*>*cogo*\<*groups.mdb*>.

point marker A point marker is a point location marker (like a dot or X) and text that usually indicates the point number, point description, and point elevation. When you create COGO points, point markers are created to represent the points on the AutoCAD graphics screen.

point node You can place point nodes in a drawing by using the AutoCAD POINT command. Point nodes are useful as reference points that you can snap to. You can specify a full three-dimensional location for a point. You can change the appearance or size of a point nodes using PDMODE or PDSIZE.

A point node is made up of only a point symbol and X,Y,Z data and is placed on the current layer. It does not have any associated northing, easting, or elevational data associated with it. It does not store point information in an external database. *See also* COGO point object.

point of curvature (PC) The point where an arc is drawn from a tangent.

point of intersection (PI) The point where two tangents meet on a horizontal alignment. Curves and spirals also have points of intersection, which are based on where the tangents would meet if they were extended outward.

point of tangency (PT) The point where a curve meets a tangent.

point of vertical intersection (PVI) The point where two tangents meet on a vertical alignment.

polyface A 3-dimensional (polygon) mesh object. Each face is capable of having numerous vertices.

precision The number of decimals to the right of the decimal point. For example, 49.96 has a precision of two. Precision settings will round numbers. For example, if the precision is 2, a value of 4.926 is rounded up to 4.93. A value of 4.923 is rounded down to 4.92.

prime meridian The meridian at 0 degrees longitude. The prime meridian runs through the original site of the Royal Observatory at Greenwich, England, and is also known as the Greenwich meridian.

prismoidal volumes A type of Section volume. When using this method, a regular grid is overlaid on the two surfaces. The elevations on both surfaces are calculated at each grid intersection. The resulting face is then broken into two triangular prisms. This method is most accurate when both surfaces have some amount of variation within them.

The following formula is used when you select the prismoidal volume calculation method:

$$V = \frac{L}{3}(A1 + \sqrt{A1 * A2} + A2)$$

Value
volume
distance between sections
area of section 1
area of section 2

profile A longitudinal section based on a horizontal alignment. Also, vertical section of the surface of the ground along any fixed line which is usually parallel to the centerline.

project A project is a way to help you organize all the drawing files and support data files and settings that are associated with each job that you work on.

Every drawing is assigned to a project. A project can contain many drawings that share the same project files like the point database, the alignment database, the parcel database, and surface files.

prototype A prototype is a saved group of settings that you base a project on. You select a prototype every time you create a new project. Default prototypes are included with Autodesk Land Desktop: one is based on feet, another on meters.

You can save drawing settings to a prototype. After you save drawing settings to a prototype, then all new drawings that you create, based on that prototype, will be created with the new settings, making it easier to maintain standard program settings for your drawings and projects.

proximity breakline A polyline, representing a breakline, that is drawn without snapping to points in the drawing. The northing, easting, and elevation of the breakline vertices are determined from the nearest point contained in the surface point data, after generating the surface.

quadrant Bearings are usually referenced by quadrant number. A quadrant is any one of the sections resulting from dividing a circle into four equal parts. Quadrant 1 is the NE corner, and quadrants 2, 3, and 4 proceed clockwise around the compass.

raster Raster data is a series of dots, or pixels, that represents an image. This type of data is produced when you scan a paper drawing, blueprint, or a photograph. Raster images can be 2-color, grayscale, or color.

raw description The original description of a point, before any description key substitution has occurred. *See also* full description.

reverse curve A curve composed of a clockwise and counterclockwise curve, back-to-back in a horizontal alignment. These two curves form an S-shape.

right-of-way (ROW) When building an alignment, one crucial factor is the allowable work area. Property lines of the property owners who reside adjacent to the construction site generally specify these limits, which are called right-of-way lines.

rubbersheeting Matching a distorted raster image or vector object to known vector points. Because a raster image, such as an aerial photograph, likely contains some distortion, you can select control points on the raster image and match them to vector
control points (known points in the *X*,*Y*,*Z* coordinate system). You can also match vector-to-vector.

section volumes A method of calculating volumes. The section method calculates cross sections from two surfaces and generates volumes using either of two methods: Prismoidal or Average End Area.

setup profile (drawing) A saved group of drawing setup settings.

shortcut menu A menu that is displayed when you select an object and then click the right button of your mouse. Shortcut menus are context-sensitive so that only commands that are relative to the object that you selected are displayed.

site To calculate volumes, you must define the area that will be used in the volume calculations. This area is called a site, which you can define using grid cells. The site is limited to rectangular shapes. The site definition is used by the Grid, Composite, and Section volume methods, and is stored in the control file, {project}.gcf. This file also holds any site definitions for the project, and all the volume calculations.

sliver triangles Triangles that have comparably little area, resulting from the triangulation of three points in which one point is only slightly offset from the edge that is created from the other two points.

slope The incline or decline of a surface, expressed as a ratio of either horizontal distance to vertical distance or run to rise. For example, the ratio for a 2-to-1 slope is expressed as 2:1 (2' of run to 1' of rise).

south azimuth Azimuths south of the equator are referenced to due South clockwise.

speed table Common references that are found in various publications on highway design. A speed table for a horizontal alignment includes a design speed with a list of the following: degree of curve, radius, superelevation rate (e), spiral length or A factor for two-lane designs, and spiral length or A factor for four-lane designs.

spiral A curve comprised of short segments that does not have a consistent rate of curvature or radius.

In modern transportation design, vehicle dynamics, as well as safety and comfort considerations, dictate the need to avoid abrupt changes in horizontal curvature. Such changes, which are encountered either where a tangent meets a circular curve or at points of compound curvature, can be avoided by using spiral (or transition) curves. A spiral also provides the logical location for the introduction of superelevation, so that it is matched to the local curvature of the alignment at every point.

spiral to curve (SC) The point where a spiral meets a curve.

spiral to tangent (ST) The point where a spiral meets a tangent.

spot elevation Refers to the elevation of a single point in the drawing. Use spot elevations to define areas that are sparse in contour data when generating a TIN using the contour information. Areas that may also need spot elevations are the top of hills, valleys, and bottom of swales.

stakeout The process of placing stakes in the ground at control points on a site that is being developed. For example, after you place points in your drawing, or after you design an alignment, you can create stakeout reports that list the coordinates of each stake. Someone else can then use these stakeout reports to place (or adjust) the stakes at the site.

standard breakline A breakline defined from selecting consecutive points or point numbers, or selected 3D polyline or 3D line objects.

state plane The plane-rectangular coordinate systems for use in defining geodetic stations. A grid is imposed upon a map projection of a specified zone or area. Northing and easting coordinates in a state plane system are called Grid Northing and Grid Easting.

static labels Static labels are labels that never change position, content, or style after you create them. Static labels cannot be updated unless you change their update properties. *See also* dynamic labels.

stationing (chainage) Horizontal alignments are generally labeled to provide a reference when talking about a specific point along the reference baseline. This labeling is called stationing and is marked out every 100 feet along the alignment (U.S. method). When referring to any point along the alignment, the station is given in hundreds of feet. For example, for information for a point that sits 1776.85 feet into a project, the station is 17+76.85. In the metric system, it is displayed in thousands of meters. For example, information for a point that sits 1776.85 meters into a project, is at station 1+776.85.

stratum The difference between two surfaces that exist in a drawing, usually the existing ground surface and a finished ground surface, and is used for calculating volumes.

superelevation Used on curves to compensate for the centrifugal force on a vehicle. In order to maintain safe, continuous operation of a vehicle, the traveling lanes are superelevated, or banked, around the curve.

supplementing distance The supplementing distance is the maximum distance between contour vertices. If the distance between vertices on a contour is greater than specified, then points will be added along the contour in equal increments that are less than or equal to the supplementing distance. Used when creating contour data for a surface; not for creating contours.

surface A triangular irregular network (TIN) of elevational data. The points of a surface are connected into triangles, which are then used to interpolate contours, and to generate profiles and cross-sections. A surface represents the ground condition at a particular time or event. For example, the existing ground surface defines a ground before it was modified, and a proposed or finished ground surface is based on a site design of proposed earthwork.

surface area The 3-dimensional (3D) area of a triangle face computed from the northing, easting, and elevation of each triangle point. The total surface area is the sum of the 3D triangle face areas within the surface boundary(s).

surface border The limits of a surface based on the 2-dimensional extents (minimum and maximum northing and eastings) of the triangulated surface data.

surface boundary The active area(s) of a surface defined from a closed polyline.

tag label Tag labels are shortened labels used to mark a line, curve, or spiral. By default, a line is tagged with L, a curve with C, and a spiral with S. Each line, curve, and spiral is also given a tag number. For example, your lines would be tagged with L1, L2, and so on.

After you label your objects with tags, you can create tables which display the tag number and then list detailed information about the object. When you use a table, you can usually display more information about an object than you could if you were labeling the object itself.

tangent A straight line that touches a given curve at only one point, and does not intersect it (line slope equals curve slope at the point).

terrain A terrain model represents the surface of the Earth, either as it currently exists (existing ground or as-built), or at a future time (finished ground).

TIN Triangular Irregular Network. Created when you build a surface. A TIN is the most common method of interpolating elevational data. The points are connected into triangles which are used to interpolate for contours, and to generate profiles and cross-sections. The lines that make up the surface triangulation are called TIN lines.

triangle area The 2-dimensional (2D) area of a triangle face computed from the northing and easting of each triangle point. The total triangle area is the sum of all 2D triangle areas with the surface boundary(s).

trim (surface) The process of removing unwanted TIN lines from a surface, thereby removing triangles.

vector Vector data is a group of mathematical equations that generates lines, arcs, and so on. This type of data is produced when you draw objects in your drawing.

vertical factor A real number, other than 1.0, used to exaggerate the vertical representation of a surface. To determine the elevations of the surface, apply the vertical factor to the difference between the real elevation and the base elevation, then add the result to the base elevation.

vertical scale The vertical scale is compared against the horizontal scale to calculate the vertical exaggeration in profiles and cross sections. It does not actually change the scale that is used when the drawing is plotted.

volume surface A volume surface is created when you calculate volumes using the grid or composite methods. The surface is created from the two surfaces that make up the stratum. The elevational values of a volume surface are actually the difference between the two surfaces. For example, at point 1000,1000, the bottom surface has an elevation of 100, and the top surface has an elevation of 150. The elevation of point 1000,1000 on the volume surface is the difference between the two surfaces, which is 50.

In terms of cut and fill situations, if a point is in a fill situation, then the elevation of the volume surface at that point is a positive number. If a point is in a cut condition, then the elevation of the volume surface at that point is a negative number.

Because surfaces are generated from the grid and composite volume calculations, you can create cut and fill contours from a volume surface to show the depths of cut and fill, and you can use any of the surface display commands to view the surface.

wall breakline Represents terrain features such as retaining walls, curbs, bridge abutments, and so on. You can define these breaklines by selecting an existing polyline. The command extends this polyline by creating new polyline segments and vertices that are parallel to the original polyline, but offset at a very small incremented distance.

water drop trail A polyline representing the trail of a water drop as it follows the 3D triangle faces of the surface. The path of the water drop trail continues until it reaches an outflow area.

watershed The catchment area for rainfall that is delineated as the drainage area producing runoff. Base flow in a stream also usually comes from the same area.

weeding factors You can use the weeding factor settings to reduce redundant points along the contours by ignoring contour vertices that are close together or along a straight line. A larger distance and deflection angle will weed a greater number of points. Distance is an absolute measure and the angle is measured in degrees. The larger the distance value, the greater the number of weeded points. The weeding factors must be less than the supplementing factors.

A point on the contour is weeded by calculating its location in relation to the vertices before and after it. If the length between these three points is less than the weeding length value, and the deflection angle is less than the weeding angle value, then the middle point will not be added to the contour data file.

Used when creating contour data for a surface; not for creating contours.

weeding The removal of points along a selected polyline representing a contour. The weeding factors determine the amount of points removed. You can use weeding to reduce the amount of point information taken from the contours that may not be necessary to generate an accurate surface. *See also* weeding factors.

XDRef An XDRef is a pointer to a column of data in an external database. The database must be keyed by point number. Then when an XDRef is used to get a value for some attribute of a point, the point number is looked up in the database, and the value from the specified column is used, in place of the point's original attribute value.

z value Elevational value in an *X*,*Y*,*Z* coordinate system.

zero height text style An AutoCAD text style that has a height of zero assigned to it. For example, by default, the AutoCAD STANDARD text style is a zero-height style.

A zero-height text style requires you to specify the height each time you use the text style. In contrast, a fixed-height text style does not require you to specify the text height each time that you use it.

zone Synonymous with Global Coordinate System. The global coordinate system describes how the sphere of the Earth is projected onto a sheet of paper and converted to the Cartesian coordinate system. A global coordinate system can differ based on the projection type, datum, and units that are used.

Index

3D graphics system requirements, 22

Α

accessing commands, 39 adding components to stand-alone installations, 30 alignment database, 193 alignments, 192 deleting and importing, 199 editing, 197 exporting as LandXML data, 223 importing as LandXML data, 227 listing, 211 making current, 195 making into one object, 194 offsetting, 201 stationing, 201 annotation, leaders, 147 APWA symbol standards, 142 arcs, 138 ARX objects, 67 bounding box, 68 ASCII point files, importing into project, 97 associating drawings with projects, 6 authorizing Autodesk Land Desktop, 29 Autodesk Land Desktop, 2 accessing commands, 39 adding components, 30 authorizing, 29 commands on command line, 48 documentation, 12 drawing environment, 38 exiting, 84 installing, 19 menu palettes, 41

Autodesk Land Desktop (continued) new features, 3 preference settings, 49 preferences, 9 projects, 5, 58 prototypes, 7 registering, 29 reinstalling on stand-alone computers, 30 repairing on stand-alone computers, 30 setting up drawing environment, 55 starting the program, 36 status bar, 46 templates, 8 toolbars, 43 uninstalling on stand-alone computers, 32 upgrading to, 24 AutoSnap, 80 AutoTrack, 82

В

bitmap files, digitizing, 148 blocks, 156 scaling, 155 symbols, 142 boundaries (surfaces), 167 breaklines in surfaces, 163, 165 breaklines, listing, 211 breaks, inserting in objects, 154

С

CAD point nodes, 88 CAD points, converting to COGO points, 89 catchment areas (watershed models), 171 checking points, 108 circles, 138 clothoid spirals, 135 COGO points, 86 creating, 88 exporting as LandXML data, 223 from CAD points, 89 importing as LandXML data, 227 point creation settings, 93 See also points color display, changing, 56 command history, viewing, 49 commands, accessing, 39 on command line, 48 pre-defined menu palettes, 41 pull-down menus, 40 shortcut menus, 47 status bar, 46 text window, 49 toolbars, 43 transparent commands, 48 Compact installation, 25 components, adding to stand-alone installations, 30 contours (surfaces), 167 creating, 180 creating from surfaces, 180 digitizing, 148 grading methods, 174 hiding in ponds and buildings, 183 converting units with LandXML, 222 coordinate geometry. See COGO points coordinate zone transformations, importing points, 102 copying objects, 151, 153 multiple copies, 153 cosinusoidal spirals, 135 cross sections exporting as LandXML data, 223 quick views, 178 Ctext, 145 curved lines, 133, 139 objects, 138 text, 145 Custom installation, components, 25 custom objects and proxy graphics, 68 customized files and settings using from previous versions, 28 customizing menu bar, 42 menu palettes, 42 cut and fill areas, highlighting, 187

D

damaged or missing files, repairing, 30 data files, settings, 54

data, exporting in LandXML, 223 database, points, 90 DEM files, 163, 168 in surfaces, 162 description keys, 114 example, 117 exporting as LandXML data, 223 importing as LandXML data, 227 point markers and point labels, 115 point settings, 116 description parameters (points), 116 dialog bar, label style properties, 215 Digital Elevation Models. See DEM files digitizing images, 148 methods, 148 Direct3D Heidi 3D display driver, 22 directories, choosing during installation, 26 display options, 56 displaying toolbars, 43 donuts, 138 drawing aids, 77 hatch patterns, 139 reference points, 79 snap points, 79 drawing environment, setting up, 38 drawing objects, 136 block definition, 156 curved objects, 138 polylines, 137 text, 143 drawing settings, 9, 52 points, 93 prototypes, 59 drawing sheets, laying out for plotting, 133 drawing tools special lines, 136 spiral curves, 134 text, 143 drawings adding external drawings, 158 associating with projects, 6 correcting mistakes, 152 creating, 62 modifying settings, 52 opening, 67 organizing layers, 73 paper space, 133 regenerating and redrawing, 73 scaling the view, 71 setup, 8, 64 sharing with other AutoCAD programs, 67 using named views, 72 viewpoints, 69 dynamic labels, 213 dynamic view, 70

Ε

editing label styles, 219 editing points, 104 selecting, 105 editing surfaces, 175 edit history, 176 editing tools, 149 correcting mistakes, 152 creating selection sets, 150 using grips, 151 utilities commands, 155 ellipses, 138 erasing objects, 152 errors, correcting, 152 exiting the programs, 84 exporting LandXML data, 223 alignments, 223 cross sections, 223 parcels, 223 points, 223 profiles, 223 surfaces, 223 exporting point references, 225 external data references (xdrefs), 119 external drawings (xref), attaching, 158

F

fence lines (special lines), 136 file paths, setting, 50 files from previous versions, 28 filters for layer groups, 76 in selections sets, 150 points, 102 finished ground data (surfaces), 174 floating viewports. *See* layout viewports folders for prototypes, 61 font styles, in text, 143 Full installation, 25

G

Geodetic Calculator, 123 calculating state plane coordinates, 124 geodetic transformation (points), 123 grips, editing objects, 151

Н

hard disk requirements for stand-alone computers, 21 hardware requirements for stand-alone computers, 20 hatch patterns, creating, 139 Heidi 3D display drivers, 22 Help accessing, 13 how to use, 14, 16 history of commands, viewing, 49

I

importing alignments, 199, 227 LandXML data, 227 parcels, 227 points, 97, 227 profiles, 227 surfaces, 227 inquiry commands, 210-211 installation types Compact, 25 Full, 25 Typical, 24 Installation wizard for stand-alone computers, 23 installing Autodesk Land Desktop, 19 3D graphics system requirements, 22 adding components, 30 authorizing, 29 choosing directories, 26 on stand-alone computers, 22 repairing damaged or missing files, 30 system requirements, 20 uninstalling, 32 using files from previous versions, 28 installing on stand-alone computers Autodesk Land Desktop, 24, 27 installation types, 24 Volo View Express, 27 write permissions required, 22

L

labels, 213, 215 accessing label commands, 214 editing, 219 label styles, 213 point labels, 88 style properties dialog bar, 215 LandXML schema, 222 LandXML, using, 222 exporting data, 223 import comparison results report, 230 importing data, 227 layers, 75 changing properties, 74 creating groups, 75 Layer Manager, 75 saving in snapshots, 75 using in drawings, 73

layout mode, 130 layout viewports, 132 displaying objects, 133 drawing scale, 71 leaders, annotation, 147 lines curved, 139 drawing, 133 polylines, 137 special lines, 136 linetypes, special lines, 136 listing object data, 210

Μ

macros, loading menu palettes, 42 Map project workspace drawing environment, 38 menu palettes customizing, 42 loading with a macro, 42 selecting, 10, 41 using, 9 MENULOAD command, 10, 42 menus custom menu bar, 42 loading, 41 pull-down, 40 mistakes, correcting in drawings, 152 model space, 130 switching to layout mode, 130 modifying objects, 152 copying, 153 inserting breaks, 154 moving, 151, 153, 158 resizing, 154 using grips, 151 multiline text (MTEXT), 144 multi-user alignment database, 193

Ν

notes, attaching text to objects, 146

0

object data, listing, 210 Object Enabler, 67 object snaps, 79 Object Viewer, 69 objects and proxy graphics, 68 changing properties, 74 custom, 68 defining as road alignment, 194 editing, 149 labeling, 213, 215 methods of selection, 149 objects (continued) modifying, 152 proxy objects, 67 querying, 211 online Help, accessing, 13 Oops command, 152 Open GL Heidi 3D display driver, system requirements, 22 operating system requirements for stand-alone computers, 20 options drawing environment, 55 window display, 56 Oracle8i Spatial requirements for stand-alone computers, 21 overriding point data in point groups, 113 external data references, 119

Ρ

palettes. See menu palettes panning an image, 70 paper space, 130, 132-133 See also layout viewports parcels, 204 calculating volumes, 185 exporting as LandXML data, 223 geometry, 204-205 importing as LandXML data, 227 managing, 207 persistent properties in point groups, 109 perspective views, 69 plotting drawings, configuring, 130 point database, 90 matching drawing points, 108 multi-users, 93 setting up, 92 point groups, 109 checking status, 112 exporting as LandXML data, 223 importing as LandXML data, 227 new features in Land Desktop, 109 overriding point data, 113 persistent properties, 109 saving to prototype, 110 updating, 112 point labels, 88 point markers, 87 changing settings, 95 description keys, 115 point references, exporting, 225 points COGO point objects, 88 creating, 96 creating point groups, 109 creation settings, 93 description keys, 114

points (continued) description parameters, 116 editing, 104-105 geodetic transformation, 123 importing, 97 marker settings, 95 new features, 89 point database, 90, 92 point filters, 102 point labels, 88 point markers, 87 settings, 93 synchronizing, 108 text settings, 95 polar array, creating, 153 polylines, 137 preference settings, 50 AutoCAD overrides, 50 data files, 54 drawing setup, 51 drawings, 52 file paths, 50 prototype, 53 processor requirements for stand-alone computers, 20 profiles exporting as LandXML data, 223 importing as LandXML data, 227 project point databases, 90 matching points to, 108 setting up, 92 projects, 5, 58 associating drawings, 6 drawing setup, 64 file locks, 60 managing, 60 prototypes, 53 renaming, 60 properties, object and layers, 74 prototypes, 7 default folder, 61 introduction, 59 managing, 61 saving point groups to, 110 settings, 53 proxy graphics, 67

Q

quadratic spirals, 135 querying drawing objects, 211

R

RAM requirements for stand-alone computers, 20 raster images digitizing, 148 listing, 211 raw descriptions point selection, 109 Readme file, 27 realtime zoom, 70 rectangular array, creating, 153 Redo command, 152 redraw and regenerate drawings, 73 reference points, 79 tracking, 82 registering Autodesk Land Desktop, 29 reinstalling Autodesk Land Desktop on stand-alone computers, 30 repairing Autodesk Land Desktop on stand-alone computers, 30 damaged or missing files during installation, 30 reporting data with LandXML, 222 reports, from queries, 211 reports, LandXML import comparison results, 230 resizing objects, 151, 154 roadway alignments, 192 defining objects, 194 deleting and importing, 199 editing, 197 offsetting, 201 stationing, 201 rotate objects with grips, 151 rubber-sheeting vectors, 149 running object snaps, 79

S

scale factor, zooming, 70 scale, in layout viewports, 71 scaling blocks, 155 schema, LandXML, 222 sections, quick views of surface, 178 selecting points, 105, 107 methods, 110 selection methods (objects), 149 selection sets, using filters, 150 settings, 49 data files, 54 drawing setup, 51 file paths, 50 modifying in drawing, 52 overriding AutoCAD commands, 50 point creation, 93 point marker, 95 point text, 95 points, 93

settings (continued) prototypes, 53, 59 using customized from previous versions, 28 window display, 56 setup profiles, 8 sheets, laying out for plotting, 133 shortcut menus, 47 single-line text, 144 sinusoidal spirals, 135 snaps, 79 software requirements for stand-alone computers, 20 special lines (linetypes), 136 spiral curves, 134 splines, 139 stand-alone computers hard disk requirements, 21 Installation Wizard, 23 installing Autodesk Land Desktop 3, 22 reinstalling Autodesk Land Desktop, 30 system requirements, 20 types of installations, 24 starting Autodesk Land Desktop, 36 display options, 56 static labels, 213 stretching objects with grips, 151 subdivisions parcels, 204 summary, LandXML import results, 230 surface grid, projecting 2D objects onto, 189 surface models, 162 hiding contour lines, 183 showing statistics, 211 using Terrain Model Explorer, 164 surfaces, 168 breaklines, 165 calculating volumes, 185 creating contours, 180 cutting cross sections of, 178 data, 165, 174 displaying, 189 editing, 175 exporting as LandXML data, 223 finished ground data, 174 hiding regions, 183 importing as LandXML data, 227 viewing in 3D, 188 viewing information about, 177 vizualizing, 177 watershed models, 171 surfaces, creating, 162 boundaries, 167 breaklines, 163 contours, 167 surface data. 165 Terrain Model Explorer, 164

surfaces, creating (continued) triangulated irregular networks. See TIN using various data, 162 symbols accessing, 142 associating with points, 114 in special lines, 136 using for description keys, 114 system folder write permission requirements, 22 system registry write permission requirements, 22 system requirements for stand-alone computers, 20

Т

tabs, model and layout, 130 tag labels, 213 templates, 8 Terrain Model Explorer, 164, 177 edit history (surfaces), 176 text attaching to objects, 146 curved, 145 inserting, 143 multiline, 144 single line, 144 text window, 49 tiled viewports (model space), 130 TIN (triangular irregular networks), 162 Today window, using, 36–37 toolbars, displaying in Land Desktop, 43 tracking, 82 transferring and archiving data with LandXML, 222 transformations, geodetic, 123 translating and rotating coordinates with LandXML, 222 transparent commands, 48 tree lines (special lines), 136 Trimble Link installing, 27 uninstalling, 32 tutorial, Autodesk Land Desktop, 12, 16 Typical installation, 24

υ

Undo command, 152 uninstalling Autodesk Land Desktop, 32 Trimble Link, 32 Volo View Express, 33 updating point groups, 112 points, 108 upgrading to Autodesk Land Desktop 3, 24 user preferences, 9

V

vector objects, 148 from raster objects, 149 vectors, rubber-sheeting, 149 viewports displaying objects, 133 laying out a drawing sheet, 133 layout, 132 tiled (model space), 130 views Object Viewer, 69 quick access from toolbar, 69 saving, 75 scaling, 71 using named views, 72 viewpoints, 69 zoom and pan, 70 Volo View Express, 27 uninstalling, 33 volumes calculating cut and fill, 185 calculating methods, 185 cut and fill tick marks, 187

W

waterdrop paths, 171 watershed models catchment areas, 171 channel network, 171 creating, 171 drain targets, 171 watersheds, 171 window display options, 56 Object Viewer, 69 Windows 98 uninstalling Autodesk Land Desktop on, 33 Windows Millennium Edition (ME), 3 uninstalling Autodesk Land Desktop on, 33 Windows NT uninstalling Autodesk Land Desktop on, 33 write permission requirements for stand-alone installations, 22

Х

xdrefs. *See* external data references xrefs. *See* external drawings

Z

zoom options, 70 naming and saving views, 72